1. Einführung für die ODD

Die ODD der Edition wird in chaining gebaut. Die Mutter ODD ist eine Anpassung der DTABf für die Manuskripten. Die body-ODDs sind dann mit der Mutter ODD verbunden.

Diese Mutter ODD enthält alle Elementen der Edition Jean Paul (teiHeader, body von den von-Briefe und Umfeldbriefe. Die <u>teiHeader</u>-Elemente der Edition sind in dieser ODD angepasst. Die Anpassungen der Von- und Umfeldbriefe <u>body</u>-Elementen sind in den jeweiligen ODDs enthalten.

2. Tabelle von allen Elementen der Edition

Alle benutzen Modulen sind mit einem `<moduleRef>` deklariert und deren Elements in `<@include>` erklärt. In diesen `<moduleRef/@include>` findet man alle Elementen der ganzen Edition, d.h. die Elementen von <u>teiHeader</u> und <u>body</u> von den von-Briefe und Umfeldbriefe. Nur sind die Element des teiHeaders in dieser motherODD.odd mit einem elementSpec angepasst.

2.1. Elements

2.1.1. <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the **model.resource** class. Multiple <u>TEI</u> elements may be combined within a <u>TEI</u> (or <u>teiCorpus</u>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)

	xml:id	(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
		Derived from — att.global
		Status — Required
		Datatype — ID
	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
		Derived from — att.typed
		Status — Required
		Datatype — teidata.enumerated
	doctype	**Status** — Recommended
		Legal values are: — letter
	version	specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.
		Status — Optional
		Datatype — teidata.version
		Note — Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.

Member of	model.describedResource
Contained by	**core:** teiCorpus

	textstructure: <u>TEI</u>
May contain	**header:** <u>teiHeader</u> **textstructure:** <u>TEI</u> <u>text</u> **transcr:** <u>facsimile</u>
Note	This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, for example: <TEI version="4.4.0" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.

Example	<pre><TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
	 <teiHeader>
	  <fileDesc>
	   <titleStmt>
	    <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
	   </titleStmt>
	   <publicationStmt>
	     First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
	        version using a namespace.
	   </publicationStmt>
	   <sourceDesc>
	     No source: this is an original work.
	   </sourceDesc>
	  </fileDesc>
	 </teiHeader>
	 <text>
	  <body>
	    This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.
	  </body>
	 </text>
	</TEI></pre>

Example	<pre><TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
	 <teiHeader>
	  <fileDesc>
	   <titleStmt>
	    <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
	   </titleStmt>
	   <publicationStmt>
	     Unpublished demonstration file.
	   </publicationStmt>
	   <sourceDesc>
	     No source: this is an original work.
	   </sourceDesc>
	  </fileDesc>
	 </teiHeader>
	 <facsimile>
	  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
	  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
	  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
	  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
	 </facsimile>
	</TEI></pre>

Schematron	<sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>
Schematron	<sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="rna" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0"/>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	    <classRef key="model.resource"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
	     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element TEI
	{
	   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,</pre>

```
                        tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
                        tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
                        tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
                        tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
                        tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
                        tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
                        tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
                        tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
                        attribute xml:id { text },
                        attribute type { text },
                        attribute [http://www.telota.de]doctype { "letter" }?,
                        attribute version { text }?,
                        ( tei_teiHeader, ( ( tei_model.resource+, tei_TEI* ) | tei_TEI+ ) )
                    }
```

2.1.2. <abbr>

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

	type		(type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include:	**suspension** (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.
			contraction (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.
			brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.
			superscription (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.
			acronym (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.
			title (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)
			organization (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

	geographic	(geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name.
	Note	The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see 6.2.
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial	
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied	
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data	
Note	If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the `<edito­rialDecl>`, either with a `<normalization>` element or a <u>`<p>`</u>.	
Example	``` <choice> <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan> <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr> <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr> <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr> </choice> ```	
Example	``` <choice> <abbr>SPQR</abbr> <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan> </choice> ```	
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```	

Schema Declaration	```
	element abbr
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   attribute type { text }?,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``	

2.1.3. \<accMat>

\<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript or object being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with it at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3. Accompanying Material]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope` `with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element accMat`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.typed.attributes,`
	`   tei_macro.specialPara`
	`}`

2.1.4. \<add>

\<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (resp, @cert) att.global.source (@source)

resp   (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Derived from	att.global.responsibility
Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
Suggested values include:	**#MB**

Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example	```
	The story I am
	  going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the
	  consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which
	  this tale takes its title.
	``

Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element add
	{
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
	   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
	   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
	   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
	   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
	   attribute resp { list { "#MB"+ } }?,
	   tei_macro.paraContent
	}
	``

2.1.5. <addrLine>

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	core: address
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the **model.addrPart** class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.
Example	``` <address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine> <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine> </address> ```
Example	``` <addrLine> <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref> </addrLine> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```
Schema Declaration	``` element addrLine { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq } ```

2.1.6. <address>

<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence publicationStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note pb **figures:** figure **header:** idno

	linking: <u>anchor</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>space</u>
Note	This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <u><addr-Line></u> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

Example	Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:
	<pre>\<address>
	  \<street>via Marsala 24\</street>
	  \<postCode>40126\</postCode>
	  \<name>Bologna\</name>
	  \<name>Italy\</name>
	\</address></pre>

Example	When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <u><name></u>:
	<pre>\<address>
	  \<street>via Marsala 24\</street>
	  \<postCode>40126\</postCode>
	  \<settlement>Bologna\</settlement>
	  \<country>Italy\</country>
	\</address></pre>

Example	<pre>\<address>
	  \<addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135\</addrLine>
	  \<addrLine>P.O. Box 6998\</addrLine>
	  \<addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680\</addrLine>
	  \<addrLine>USA\</addrLine>
	\</address></pre>

Example	<pre>\<address>
	  \<country key="FR"/>
	  \<settlement type="city">Lyon\</settlement>
	  \<postCode>69002\</postCode>
	  \<district type="arrondissement">IIème\</district>
	  \<district type="quartier">Perrache\</district>
	  \<street>
	    \<num>30\</num>, Cours de Verdun\</street>
	\</address></pre>

Content model	<pre>\<content>
	 \<sequence>
	  \<classRef key="model.global"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  \<sequence minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   \<classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
	   \<classRef key="model.global"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  \</sequence>
	 \</sequence>
	\</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element address
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   (tei_model.global*, (tei_model.addrPart, tei_model.global*)+)
	}</pre>

2.1.7. <anchor>

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 16.5. Correspondence and Alignment]	
Module	linking
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)
Member of	<u>model.milestoneLike</u>

Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	Empty element
Note	On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example	`<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>`
	`<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>`
	`</s>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`  <empty/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element anchor { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, empty }`

2.1.8. <author>

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** editionStmt titleStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example	
| | ```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634-1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
 <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
<persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
 <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
   Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element author
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

2.1.9. <availability>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]		
Module	header	
Attributes	status	(status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include	**free** (free) the text is freely available.
		restricted (restricted) the text is not freely available.
Member of	model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail	
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** publicationStmt	
May contain	**core:** p **header:** licence	
Note	A consistent format should be adopted	
| **Example** | ```
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
 <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
``` | |
| **Example** | ```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
  <p>The MIT License
     applies to this document.</p>
  <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
  <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy
     of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal
     in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
     to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
``` | |

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>

```
                         copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
                         furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
                      <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in
                         all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
                      <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR
                         IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,
                         FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
                         AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
                         LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,
                         OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN
                         THE SOFTWARE.</p>
                   </licence>
                </availability>
```

</td></tr>
</table>

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element availability
{
   attribute status { text }?,
   ( tei_model.availabilityPart | tei_model.pLike )+
}
``` |

2.1.10. \<bibl\>

\<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.declarable (@default) att.docStatus (@status) att.global.linking (corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @ex-clude, @select)

	corresp	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	string
	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classifica-tion scheme or typology.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	base-Text
			wit-ness-Text
	subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	werk
			werke-jp
	corresp	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	string

Member of	model.biblLike model.biblPart
Contained by	**core:** add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence sourceDesc **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** person place **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor email expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref respStmt sic term title unclear **figures:** figure **header:** availability edition idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msIdentifier **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Contains *phrase-level* elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class
Example	```<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>```

Example	```<bibl>```
	`<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In`
	`<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.`
	`<publisher>OUP</publisher>`
	`<date>1968</date>.`
	`</bibl>`

Example	```<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"```
	`xml:id="carlin_2003">`
	`<author>`
	`<name>`
	`<surname>Carlin</surname>`
	`(<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>`
	`</author>,`
	`<title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last`
	`congrès</title> dans`
	`<bibl type="monogr">`
	`<title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.`
	`Tobin</title>, éd.`
	`<editor>`
	`<name>`
	`<forename>Claire</forename>`
	`<surname>Carlin</surname>`
	`</name>`
	`</editor> et`
	`<editor>`
	`<name>`
	`<forename>Kathleen</forename>`
	`<surname>Wine</surname>`
	`</name>`
	`</editor>,`
	`<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,`
	`<publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,`
	`<date when="2003">2003</date>.`
	`</bibl>`
	`</bibl>`

Content model	```<content>```
	`<alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<textNode/>`
	`<classRef key="model.gLike"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.highlighted"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.segLike"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.biblPart"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.global"/>`
	`</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element bibl
{
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   attribute corresp { text }?,
   attribute type { "baseText" | "witnessText" }?,
   attribute subtype { "werk" | "werke-jp" }?,
   attribute corresp { text }?,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.highlighted
    | tei_model.pPart.data
    | tei_model.pPart.edit
    | tei_model.segLike
    | tei_model.ptrLike
    | tei_model.biblPart
    | tei_model.global
   )*
}
``` |

2.1.11. \<biblScope\>

\<biblScope\> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module	core
Attributes	att.global (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.citing (unit, @from, @to)

	n	(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.	
		Derived from	att.global
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.text
		Legal values are:	comment
			text
	unit	identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.	
		Derived from	att.citing
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**page**

Member of	model.imprintPart
Contained by	**core:** bibl
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg

	namesdates: <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>ex</u> <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute may be used without *to*; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded `<biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>`. It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of `<imprint>`, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.
Example	``` <biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope> <biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/> <biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope> <biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element biblScope
	{
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
	   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
	   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
	   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
	   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
	   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
	   tei_att.citing.attribute.from,
	   tei_att.citing.attribute.to,
	   attribute n { "comment"
		"text" }?,
		   attribute unit { "page" }?,
		   tei_macro.phraseSeq
		}
		``

2.1.12. \<body\>

\<body\> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls)
Contained by	**textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> <u>text</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>cit</u> <u>desc</u> <u>gap</u> <u>head</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>list</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> **figures:** <u>figure</u> <u>table</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>byline</u> <u>closer</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>div</u> <u>floatingText</u> <u>opener</u> <u>postscript</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>space</u>
Example	``` <body> <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l> <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l> ```

	```<l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l> <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l> <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l> <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l> <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l> <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l> <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer> </body>```
Content model	```<content>\n <sequence>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n <sequence minOccurs="0">\n <classRef key="model.divTop"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divTop"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n <sequence minOccurs="0">\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n <alternate>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.divLike"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n <sequence>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\n <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>\n <classRef key="model.common"/>\n </alternate>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </sequence>\n <alternate minOccurs="0">\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.divLike"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n </alternate>\n <sequence minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </sequence>\n </sequence>\n</content>```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element body
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divTop )* )?,
      ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( tei_model.div1Like, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model.common ), tei_model.global* )+,
            (
               (
                  tei_model.divLike,
                  ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
               )+
             | (
                  tei_model.div1Like,
                  ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
               )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
``` |

2.1.13. \<byline\>

\<byline\> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.divWrapper
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body div opener
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the \<docAuthor\> element.
| **Example** | ```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
 while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
 Master of Arts,
 (Somtimes)
 Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
``` |

```
        <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
        <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
      </alternate>
    </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element byline
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | docAuthor | tei_model.global )*
}
``` |
|---|---|

2.1.14. <cb>

<cb> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	Empty element
Note	On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.
| **Example** | Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:<br>```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
  sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
  or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
  containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
 <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <empty/>
</content>
``` |

| Schema Declaration | ```
element cb
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.edition.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
``` |
|---|---|

2.1.15. \<cell\>

\<cell\> (cell) contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]	
Module	figures
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)
Contained by	figures: row
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
<row>
 <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
 <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
   and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element cell
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara
}
``` |

2.1.16. \<choice\>

\<choice\> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence

	linking: seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr choice corr expan orig sic unclear **linking:** seg **transcr:** ex supplied

Note	Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.
	    Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.
	    Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the `<app>` element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example	An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows. ```\n Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above\n articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of\n meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>\n <sic>1724</sic>\n <corr>1728</corr>\n </choice> of our subjects,\nwith free access to our royal person, and other marks of our\n<choice>\n <orig>favour</orig>\n <reg>favor</reg>\n </choice>. \n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <alternate minOccurs="2"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>\n <elementRef key="choice"/>\n </alternate>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement choice\n{\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n (tei_model.choicePart | tei_choice)+\n}\n```

2.1.17. <cit>

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname

	textcrit: <u>witness</u> **textstructure:** <u>body</u> <u>div</u> <u>postscript</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>cit</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> **figures:** <u>figure</u> <u>formula</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>space</u>

Example	<pre><cit>
	 <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,
	  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
	 <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
	</cit></pre>

Example	<pre><entry>
	 <form>
	  <orth>horrifier</orth>
	 </form>
	 <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
	  <quote>to horrify</quote>
	 </cit>
	 <cit type="example">
	  <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
	  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
	   <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
	  </cit>
	 </cit>
	</entry></pre>

Example	<pre><cit type="example">
	 <quote xml:lang="mix">Ka'an yu tsa'a Pedro.</quote>
	 <media url="soundfiles-gen:S_speak_1s_on_behalf_of_Pedro_01_02_03_TS.wav"
	  mimeType="audio/wav"/>
	 <cit type="translation">
	  <quote xml:lang="en">I'm speaking on behalf of Pedro.</quote>
	 </cit>
	 <cit type="translation">
	  <quote xml:lang="es">Estoy hablando de parte de Pedro.</quote>
	 </cit>
	</cit></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <alternate minOccurs="1"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
	  <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
	  <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
	  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
	  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
	  <elementRef key="pc"/>
	  <elementRef key="q"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element cit
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   (
	      tei_model.biblLike
	    | tei_model.egLike
	    | tei_model.entryPart
	    | tei_model.global
	    | tei_model.graphicLike
	    | tei_model.ptrLike
	    | tei_model.attributable
	    | pc
	    | q
	   )+
	}</pre>

2.1.18. <closer>

<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	textstructure

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divBottomPart
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body div postscript
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** dateline salute signed **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Example	```xml
	<div type="letter">
	 <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
	 <closer>
	  <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
	  <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
	 </closer>
	</div>
	``

Example	```xml
	<div type="chapter">
	 <p>
	<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
	 <closer>
	  <dateline>
	   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
	   <date>1914-1921</date>
	  </dateline>
	 </closer>
	</div>
	``

Content model	```xml
	<content>
	 <alternate minOccurs="0"
	 maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <textNode/>
	  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
	  <elementRef key="signed"/>
	  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
	  <elementRef key="salute"/>
	  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element closer
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.written.attributes,
	   (
	      text
	    | tei_model.gLike
	    | tei_signed
	    | tei_dateline
	    | tei_salute
	    | tei_model.phrase
	    | tei_model.global
	   )*
	}
	``

2.1.19. <collection>

<collection> (collection) contains the name of a collection of manuscripts or other objects, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

	@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	**msdescription:** msIdentifier
May contain	**core:** abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr ref term title **figures:** figure **header:** idno **linking:** anchor **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark space subst character data
Example	``` <msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region>California</region> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <collection>Ellesmere</collection> <idno>El 26 C 9</idno> <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName> </msIdentifier> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element collection
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.naming.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
	}
	``

2.1.20. <corr>

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText

	transcr: <u>ex</u> <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <u>\<corr\></u> may be used alone: ```\nI don't know,\n Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove\n or disprove anyone's theories?\n```
Example	It is also possible, using the <u>\<choice\></u> and <u>\<sic\></u> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading: ```\nI don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —\n how <choice>\n <sic>we can</sic>\n <corr>can we</corr>\n</choice> prove or\n disprove anyone's theories?\n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement corr\n{\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n tei_att.editLike.attributes,\n tei_att.typed.attributes,\n tei_macro.paraContent\n}\n```

2.1.21. \<correspAction\>

\<correspAction\> (correspondence action) contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module	header		
Attributes	type	describes the nature of the action.	
		Derived from	<u>att.typed</u>
		Status	Required
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Suggested values include:	**sent** information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message.
			received information concerning the receipt of a message.
			transmitted information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding.
			redirected information concerning the redirection of an unread message.
			forwarded information concerning the forwarding of a message.
Member of	<u>model.correspDescPart</u>		
Contained by	**header:** <u>correspDesc</u>		
May contain	**core:** <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>email</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> **header:** <u>idno</u>		

	namesdates: <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u>
Example	``` <correspAction type="sent"> <persName>Adelbert von Chamisso</persName> <settlement>Vertus</settlement> <date when="1807-01-29"/> </correspAction> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	  <classRef key="model.correspActionPart"
	  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element correspAction
	{
	   attribute type
	   {
	      "sent"
		"received"	"transmitted"	"redirected"	"forwarded"
					   },
					   (tei_model.correspActionPart+ | tei_model.pLike+)
					}
					``

2.1.22. <correspContext>

<correspContext> (correspondence context) provides references to preceding or following correspondence related to this piece of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]	

Module	header
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
	n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
	<table><tr><td>**Derived from**</td><td><u>att.global</u></td></tr><tr><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr><tr><td>**Datatype**</td><td><u>teidata.text</u></td></tr><tr><td>**Legal values are:**</td><td>cor- pus edi- tion cor- re- spon- dence</td></tr></table>
Member of	<u>model.correspDescPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>correspDesc</u>
May contain	core: <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>ref</u>

Example	```
	<correspContext>
	 <ptr type="next" subtype="toAuthor"
	  target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief101VarnhagenanBoeckh"/>
	 <ptr type="prev" subtype="fromAuthor"
	  target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief103BoeckhanVarnhagen"/>
	</correspContext>
	``

Example	``` <correspContext> <ref type="prev" target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A040962"> Previous letter of <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>: <date when="1816-12-30">December 30, 1816</date> </ref> <ref type="next" ```

| | ```
  target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041003"> Next letter of
<persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
<persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
<date when="1817-01-05">January 5, 1817</date>
 </ref>
</correspContext>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.correspContextPart"
  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element correspContext
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   attribute n { "corpus" | "edition" | "correspondence" }?,
   tei_model.correspContextPart+
}
``` |

2.1.23. <correspDesc>

<correspDesc> (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to one act of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.declarable (@default) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** note p **header:** correspAction correspContext
| **Example** | ```
<correspDesc>
 <correspAction type="sent">
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
  <settlement>Dresden</settlement>
  <date when="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</date>
 </correspAction>
 <correspAction type="received">
  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>
  <settlement>Prag</settlement>
 </correspAction>
 <correspContext>
  <ref type="prev"
   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209">Previous letter of
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
    to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
  <date from="1817-06-19" to="1817-06-20">June 19/20, 1817</date>
  </ref>
  <ref type="next"
   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217">Next letter of
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
  <date when="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</date>
  </ref>
 </correspContext>
``` |

| | ```
</correspDesc>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.correspDescPart"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element correspDesc
{
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( tei_model.correspDescPart+ | tei_model.pLike+ )
}
``` |

2.1.24. <country>

<country> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution msIdentifier **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName place placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
| **Example** | ```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element country
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.naming.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

2.1.25. <date>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3"><date> (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Module</td><td colspan="2">core</td></tr>
<tr><td>Attributes</td><td colspan="2">att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.datable (calendar, @period) att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.typed (type, @subtype)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>cert</td><td>(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td><table><tr><td>Derived from</td><td>att.global.responsibility</td></tr><tr><td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr><tr><td>Datatype</td><td>teidata.probCert</td></tr><tr><td>Legal values are:</td><td>high
low
medium</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>calendar</td><td>indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td><table><tr><td>Derived from</td><td>att.datable</td></tr><tr><td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr><tr><td>Schematron</td><td><sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.)) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></td></tr><tr><td>Datatype</td><td>1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</td></tr><tr><td>Legal values are:</td><td>#Gregorian</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>type</td><td>characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td><table><tr><td>Derived from</td><td>att.typed</td></tr></table></td></tr>
</table>

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.enumerated
Legal values are:	pub-li-ca-tion

Member of	model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence publicationStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb mile-stone name note num orig pb ptr ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>`

Example	`Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day`
	`of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic`
	`the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>`

Example	`<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>`
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element date
	{
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
	   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
	   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
	   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
	   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
	   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
	   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
	   tei_att.datable.attribute.period,
	   tei_att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
	   tei_att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
	   tei_att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
	``

```
              tei_att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
              tei_att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
              tei_att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,
              tei_att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,
              tei_att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,
              tei_att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,
              tei_att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,
              tei_att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,
              tei_att.editLike.attributes,
              tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
              tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
              attribute cert { "high" | "low" | "medium" }?,
              attribute calendar { list { "#Gregorian"+ } }?,
              attribute type { "publication" }?,
              ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
          }
```

2.1.26. <dateline>

<dateline> (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.divWrapper
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body closer div opener
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>`

Example	`<div type="chapter">`
	`<p>`
	`<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>`
	`<closer>`
	`<dateline>`
	`<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>`
	`<date>1914-1921</date>`
	`</dateline>`
	`</closer>`
	`</div>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<textNode/>`
	`<classRef key="model.gLike"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.phrase"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.global"/>`
	`<elementRef key="docDate"/>`
	`</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element dateline`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global | docDate )*`
	`}`

2.1.27. <del>

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	

Module	core

Attributes	att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.global.rendition (rendition, @rend, @style)
	
	rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.
	
	  Derived from att.global.rendition
	
	  Status Optional
	
	  Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	
	  Suggested values include: **#s**

Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility). There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's

	or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.
Example	```<l> <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del> weht der Wind </l>```
Example	```<del rend="overstrike"> <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/> </del>```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element del { tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style, tei_att.dimensions.attributes, attribute rendition { list { "#s"+ } }?, tei_macro.paraContent }```

2.1.28. <desc>

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [22.4.1. Description of Components]	
Module	core
Attributes	type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**dep-re-ca-tionIn-fo** (deprecation information) This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.
			ac-c-Mat
			```<dataSpec module="tei" ident="teidata.point" validUntil="2050-02-25"> <desc type="deprecationInfo" versionDate="2018-09-14" xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA, strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either <q>3</q> or <q>3.0</q>.</desc> <!-- ... --> </dataSpec>```

Member of	model.descLike model.labelLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc gap graphic head hi item l list listBibl note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** listPerson listPlace place **textcrit:** listWit witness

	textstructure: <u>body</u> <u>div</u> <u>postscript</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>address</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>hi</u> <u>list</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>name</u> <u>num</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>ex</u> <u>subst</u> character data
Note	When used in a specification element such as `<elementSpec>`, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb.

Example	Example of a <u><desc></u> element inside a documentation element.
	<pre><dataSpec module="tei"
	 ident="teidata.point">
	 <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
	  xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.</desc>
	 <content>
	  <dataRef name="token"
	   restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
	 </content>
	<!-- ... -->
	</dataSpec></pre>

Example	Example of a <u><desc></u> element in a non-documentation element.
	<pre><place xml:id="KERG2">
	 <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
	<!-- ... -->
	 <terrain>
	  <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
	 </terrain>
	<!-- ... -->
	</place></pre>

Schematron	A <u><desc></u> with a *type* of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <u><desc></u> is a valid child of that element. <sch:rule context="tei:desc[@type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element desc
	{
	   attribute type { "deprecationInfo"
		"accMat" }?,
		   tei_macro.limitedContent
		}</pre>

2.1.29. <div>

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.divLike</u> (@org, @sample) (<u>att.fragmentable</u> (@part)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.written</u> (@hand)
Member of	<u>model.divLike</u>

Contained by	textstructure: body div
May contain	**core:** bibl cb cit desc gap head l lb list listBibl milestone note p pb quote **figures:** figure table **linking:** anchor **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** listPerson listPlace **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark space
Example	<pre><body>
 <div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all
     exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
      happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
   <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to
       authority [...] </p>
   </div>
   <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</body></pre>
Schematron	\<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"\> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. \</sch:report\>
Schematron	\<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"\> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. \</sch:report\>
Content model	<pre><content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
   <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
       <classRef key="model.common"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate>
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"</pre>

```
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
         <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
       </sequence>
      </sequence>
     </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element div
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.divLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( tei_model.divLike | tei_model.divGenLike ), tei_model.global* )+
          | (
               ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model.common ), tei_model.global* )+,
               (
                  ( tei_model.divLike | tei_model.divGenLike ),
                  tei_model.global*
               )*
            )
         ),
         ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
``` |

2.1.30. <edition>

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** editionStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element edition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
``` |

2.1.31. <editionStmt>

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** author editor p respStmt **header:** edition
Example	``` <editionStmt> <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition> <respStmt> <resp>Adapted by </resp> <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name> </respStmt> </editionStmt> ```
Example	``` <editionStmt> First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date> </editionStmt> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <alternate>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <sequence>
	   <elementRef key="edition"/>
	   <classRef key="model.respLike"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element editionStmt
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   (tei_model.pLike+
		(tei_edition, tei_model.respLike*))
		}
		``

2.1.32. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** editionStmt titleStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Note	A consistent format should be adopted.
	Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
Example	```\n<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>\n<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>\n<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>\n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement editor\n{\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n tei_att.naming.attributes,\n tei_att.datable.attributes,\n tei_macro.phraseSeq\n}\n```

2.1.33. <email>

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.6.2. Addresses]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addressLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822
Example	```\n<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>\n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement email { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }\n```

2.1.34. <ex>

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module	transcr
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	Character data only
| Example | ```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
 <expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
``` |
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/>
</content>
``` |
| Schema Declaration | ```
element ex
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext
}
``` |

2.1.35. <expan>

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied

May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion. If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a `<normalization>` element or a <p>.
Example	```\nThe address is Southmoor\n<choice>\n <expan>Road</expan>\n <abbr>Rd</abbr>\n</choice>\n```
Example	```\n<choice xml:lang="la">\n <abbr>Imp</abbr>\n <expan>Imp<ex>erator</ex>\n </expan>\n</choice>\n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement expan\n{\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n tei_att.editLike.attributes,\n tei_macro.phraseSeq\n}\n```

2.1.36. <facsimile>

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	model.resource
Contained by	**core:** teiCorpus **textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**core:** graphic **figures:** formula
Example	```\n<facsimile>\n <graphic url="page1.png"/>\n <surface>\n <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>\n <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>\n </surface>\n <graphic url="page3.png"/>\n <graphic url="page4.png"/>\n</facsimile>\n```
Example	```\n<facsimile>\n <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">\n <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>\n </surface>\n</facsimile>\n```

Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:facsimile//tei:line | tei:facsimile//tei:zone"> <sch:report test="child::text()[normalize-space(.) ne ''\]"> A facsimile element represents a text with images, thus transcribed text should not be present within it. </sch:report> </sch:rule>
Content model	``` <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/> <elementRef key="surface"/> <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/> </alternate> <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element facsimile
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
	   (front?, (tei_model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp)+, back?)
	}
	``

2.1.37. <figure>

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]	
Module	figures
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.global
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** bibl cb cit desc gap graphic head l lb list listBibl milestone note p pb quote **figures:** figure formula table **linking:** anchor **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** listPerson listPlace **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** byline closer dateline floatingText postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark space

Example	```
	<figure>
	 <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
	 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a
	   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
	 <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
	  scale="0.5"/>
	</figure>
	``

Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.headLike"/> ```

```
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   </alternate>
  </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element figure
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike
    | tei_model.common
    | figDesc
    | tei_model.graphicLike
    | tei_model.global
    | tei_model.divBottom
   )*
}
``` |

2.1.38. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** editionStmt notesStmt publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt
Note	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
| **Example** | ```
<fileDesc>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
 </titleStmt>
 <publicationStmt>
  <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
 </publicationStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
 </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <sequence>
   <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="editionStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element fileDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
``` |

```
          (
            tei_titleStmt,
            tei_editionStmt?,
            extent?,
            tei_publicationStmt,
            seriesStmt*,
            tei_notesStmt?
          ),
          tei_sourceDesc+
        )
}
```

2.1.39. <floatingText>

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.attributable
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** cb gap lb milestone note pb **figures:** figure **linking:** anchor **textstructure:** body **transcr:** fw metamark space
Note	A floating text has the same content as any other <text> and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a <group> of tesselated texts.
Example	<pre><body>
 <div type="scene">
  <sp>
   <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
  </sp>
  <floatingText type="pwp">
   <body>
    <div type="act">
     <sp>
      <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
     </sp>
<!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
    </div>
   </body>
  </floatingText>
  <sp>
   <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
  </sp>
 </div>
</body></pre>
Content model	<pre><content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate></pre>

```
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element floatingText
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( front, tei_model.global* )?,
      ( tei_body | group ),
      tei_model.global*,
      ( back, tei_model.global* )?
   )
}
``` |

2.1.40. <foreign>

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Note	The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.
	    This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.
	    The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.
| **Example** | ```
This is
 heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
 philosophicus</foreign>?
``` |

| Content model | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
|---|---|
| Schema Declaration | ```
element foreign { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
``` |

2.1.41. <forename>

<forename> (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.persNamePart
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
<persName>
 <roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
 <forename>George</forename>
 <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element forename
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

2.1.42. <formula>

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]	
Module	figures
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

	@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.graphicLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure formula table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** facsimile fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** graphic hi **figures:** formula character data
Example	`<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>`
Example	`<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula>`

Example	`<formula notation="mathml">`
	` <m:math>`
	`  <m:mi>E</m:mi>`
	`  <m:mo>=</m:mo>`
	`  <m:mi>m</m:mi>`
	`  <m:msup>`
	`   <m:mrow>`
	`    <m:mi>c</m:mi>`
	`   </m:mrow>`
	`   <m:mrow>`
	`    <m:mn>2</m:mn>`
	`   </m:mrow>`
	`  </m:msup>`
	` </m:math>`
	`</formula>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element formula`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.notated.attributes,`
	`   ( text | tei_model.graphicLike | tei_model.hiLike )*`
	`}`

2.1.43. <fw>

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) att.typed (type, @subtype)

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">type</td><td colspan="2">classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**Derived from**</td><td>att.typed</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Recommended</td></tr>
</table>

Datatype		teidata.enumerated
Sample values include:	**header**	a running title at the top of the page
	footer	a running title at the bottom of the page
	pageNum	(page number) a page number or foliation symbol
	lineNum	(line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry
	sig	(signature) a signature or gathering symbol
	catch	(catchword) a catch-word

Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.
Example	`<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element fw
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   tei_att.placement.attributes,
	   tei_att.written.attributes,
	   attribute type { text }?,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

2.1.44. <gap>

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

	unit	names the unit used for the measurement	
		Derived from	att.dimensions
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**cm**
			mm
			in
			line
			char
			words
			chars
	reason	(reason) gives the reason for omission	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
		Suggested values include:	**cancelled** (cancelled)
			deleted (deleted)
			editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
			illegible (illegible)
			inaudible (inaudible)
			irrelevant (irrelevant)
			sampling (sampling)

	agent (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include: **rubbing** (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
	mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
	smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke
Member of	model.global.edit
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** desc
Note	The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.
Example	`<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"` ` reason="illegible"/>`
Example	`<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"` ` reason="sampling"/>`

Example	`<del>`
	` <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"`
	`  reason="illegible"/>`
	`</del>`

Example	`<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element gap`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.timed.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.editLike.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,`
	`   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.extent,`
	`   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.precision,`
	`   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.scope,`
	`   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,`
	`   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atMost,`

```
                              tei_att.ranging.attribute.min,
                              tei_att.ranging.attribute.max,
                              tei_att.ranging.attribute.confidence,
                              attribute unit { "cm" | "mm" | "in" | "line" | "char" | "words" | "chars" }?,
                              attribute reason
                              {
                                 list
                                 {
                                    (
                                        "cancelled"
                                      | "deleted"
                                      | "editorial"
                                      | "illegible"
                                      | "inaudible"
                                      | "irrelevant"
                                      | "sampling"
                                    )+
                                 }
                              }?,
                              attribute agent { text }?,
                              ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
                           }
```

2.1.45. <graphic>

<graphic> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.graphicLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure formula table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** facsimile fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** desc
Note	The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute. Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example	`<figure>`
	` <graphic url="fig1.png"/>`
	` <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>`
	` <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a`
	`   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>`
	`</figure>`

Example	`<facsimile>`
	` <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">`
	`  <surface>`
	`   <graphic url="page1.png"/>`
	`  </surface>`
	`  <surface>`
	`   <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>`
	`   <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>`
	`  </surface>`
	` </surfaceGrp>`
	`</facsimile>`

Example	`<facsimile>`
	` <surfaceGrp n="leaf1" xml:id="spi001">`
	`  <surface xml:id="spi001r">`
	`   <graphic type="normal"`

```
                     subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001r.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
                     url="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="normal"
                     subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="high-contrast"
                     subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="high-contrast"
                     subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
                  </surface>
                  <surface xml:id="spi001v">
                   <graphic type="normal"
                    subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v.jpg"/>
                   <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
                    url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
                   <graphic type="normal"
                    subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
                   <graphic type="high-contrast"
                    subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
                   <graphic type="high-contrast"
                    subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
                   <zone xml:id="spi001v_detail01">
                    <graphic type="normal"
                     subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="normal"
                     subtype="low-res"
                     url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="normal"
                     subtype="high-res"
                     url="spi/normal/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="high-contrast"
                     subtype="low-res"
                     url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
                    <graphic type="high-contrast"
                     subtype="high-res"
                     url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
                   </zone>
                  </surface>
                 </surfaceGrp>
                </facsimile>
```

| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element graphic
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.media.attributes,
   tei_att.resourced.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_model.descLike*
}
``` |

2.1.46. <handDesc>

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different hands used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
	hands (hands) specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.count
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	**msdescription:** physDesc
May contain	**core:** p
| **Example** | ```
<handDesc>
 <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana formata</term>.</handNote>
``` |

|  | ```
</handDesc>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<handDesc hands="2">
 <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
  unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
  ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably
  Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand
  on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p>
</handDesc>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence>
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element handDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute hands { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( summary?, handNote+ ) )
}
``` |

2.1.47. <head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.headLike
Contained by	**core:** list listBibl **figures:** figure table **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** listPerson listPlace place **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** body div postscript
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.
Example	The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
 <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of
  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
 <div2 type="section">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve
     years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six
     years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
 </div2>
</div1>
```

Example	When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
 <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
 <p>
  <lb n="1251"/>
  <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>
  </hi>
  <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium
   [...]
 </p>
</div>
```

Example	The <u><head></u> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <list rend="bulleted">
 <head>Connectives</head>
 <item>above</item>
 <item>accordingly</item>
 <item>across from</item>
 <item>adjacent to</item>
 <item>again</item>
 <item>
<!-- ... -->
 </item>
</list>
```

Content model	

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	

```
element head
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.phrase
    | tei_model.inter
    | tei_model.lLike
    | tei_model.global
   )*
}
```

2.1.48. <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]	
Module	core
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (rend, rendition, @style) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)

rend	(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.	
	Derived from	att.global.rendition
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
	Legal values are:	**bold**
		italic
		underline
rendition	points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.	
	Derived from	att.global.rendition
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	Suggested values include:	**#left**
		#right
		#smaller
		#sameLine
		#aq
		#fr
		#rdk
		#sup
		#u
		#uu
		#g
		#et
		#i
cert	(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.	
	Derived from	att.global.responsibility
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.probCert
	Legal values are:	**high**
		low
		medium
hand	points to a `<handNote>` element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.	
	Derived from	att.written

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.pointer
	Suggested values include:	#author

Member of	model.hiLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell formula **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Example	`<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>`
	` that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,`
	` in consideration of the said intended marriage ...`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element hi` `{` `   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,` `   tei_att.global.attribute.n,` `   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,` `   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,` `   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,` `   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,` `   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,` `   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,` `   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,` `   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,` `   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,` `   attribute rend { list { ( "bold" | "italic" | "underline" )+ } }?,` `   attribute rendition` `   {` `     list` `     {` `       (` `           "#left"` `	"#right"` `	"#smaller"` `	"#sameLine"` `	"#aq"` `	"#fr"` `	"#rdk"` `	"#sup"`

```
                             | "#u"
                             | "#uu"
                             | "#g"
                             | "#et"
                             | "#i"
                        )+
                    }
                }?,
                attribute cert { "high" | "low" | "medium" }?,
                attribute hand { "#author" }?,
                tei_macro.paraContent
            }
```

2.1.49. <idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	

Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

	type	categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include	**ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.
			ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.
			DOI Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.
			URI Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.
			VIAF A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.
			ESTC English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.
			OCLC OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union cata-

	log for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.
	shelf-mark
Member of	model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition idno licence publicationStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution msIdentifier **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person place placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**header:** idno character data
Note	<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
Example	``` <idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno> <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno> <idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno> <idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno> <idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno> <idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno> <idno type="Wing">C695</idno> <idno type="oldCat"> <g ref="#sym"/>345 </idno> ``` In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as #sym.
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element idno
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   attribute type { text }?,
	   (text | tei_model.gLike | tei_idno)*
	}
	``

2.1.50. <institution>

<institution> (institution) contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript or other object is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype) type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from	att.typed
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include:	**shelf-mark**

Contained by	**msdescription:** msIdentifier
May contain	**core:** abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr ref term title **figures:** figure **header:** idno **linking:** anchor **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark space subst character data
Example	``` <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element institution
	{
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.naming.attributes,
	   attribute type { "shelfmark" }?,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
	}
	``

2.1.51. <item>

<item> (item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Contained by	**core:** list
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicit-

ly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <u><item></u> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not *n*.

| Example | ```
<list rend="numbered">
 <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
 <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
 <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
 <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
 <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
 <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
 <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
 <item> ...</item>
</list>
``` |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element item
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara
}
``` |

2.1.52. <keywords>

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]		
Module	header	
Attributes	scheme	identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a `<taxonomy>` element, or by some other resource.
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
		Legal values are: **#cor-re-spon-dents**
		#top-ics
Contained by	header: <u>textClass</u>	
May contain	core: <u>list</u> <u>term</u>	
Note	Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <u>term</u> element directly within the <u>keywords</u> element. An alternative usage, in which each <u>term</u> appears within an <u>item</u> inside a <u>list</u> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.	
| **Example** | ```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
 <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
 <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
``` | |
| **Example** | ```
<keywords>
 <term>Fermented beverages</term>
 <term>Central Andes</term>
 <term>Schinus molle</term>
 <term>Molle beer</term>
 <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
 <term>Ethnography</term>
 <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
``` | |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="list"/>
``` | |

```
     </alternate>
   </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element keywords
{
   attribute scheme { "#correspondents" | "#topics" }?,
   ( tei_term+ | tei_list )
}
``` |

2.1.53. <l>

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.fragmentable (@part)
Member of	model.lLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del head hi item note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</l>`
Schematron	<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </sch:report>
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element l
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.phrase
    | tei_model.inter
    | tei_model.global
   )*
}
``` |

2.1.54. <lb>

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	Empty element
Note	By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example	This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:
	<pre><l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
	<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
	<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l></pre>

Example	This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.
	<pre><titlePart>
	 <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
	</titlePart></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <empty/>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element lb
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_att.edition.attributes,
	   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
	   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
	   empty
	}</pre>

2.1.55. \<licence\>

\<licence\> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)
	target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References
	Derived from att.pointing
	Status Recommended
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	Legal values are: **http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/**
Member of	model.availabilityPart
Contained by	header: availability
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	A \<licence\> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
Example	`<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence Creative Commons At` `</licence>`

Example	`<availability>`
	`<licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"`
	`notBefore="2013-01-01">`
	`<p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence`
	`applies to this document.</p>`
	`<p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>`
	`</licence>`
	`</availability>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	

```
element licence
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
    tei_att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    attribute target
    {
        list { "http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/"+ }
    }?,
    tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

2.1.56. <list>

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">type</td><td colspan="2">(type) describes the nature of the items in the list.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Derived from**</td><td colspan="2">att.typed</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td colspan="2">Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td colspan="2">teidata.enumerated</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Suggested values include:**</td><td>**gloss**</td><td>(gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a `<label>` element preceding the list item.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**index**</td><td>(index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**instructions**</td><td>(instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**litany**</td><td>(litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>**syllogism**</td><td>(syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td colspan="2">Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <u><list></u> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.
The formal syntax of the element declarations allows `<label>` tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.</td></tr>
</table>

Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** keywords licence

	linking: seg **msdescription:** accMat **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** cb desc gap head item lb milestone note pb **figures:** figure **linking:** anchor **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark space
Note	May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example	<pre><list rend="numbered">
	 <item>a butcher</item>
	 <item>a baker</item>
	 <item>a candlestick maker, with
	 <list rend="bulleted">
	  <item>rings on his fingers</item>
	  <item>bells on his toes</item>
	 </list>
	 </item>
	</list></pre>

Example	<pre><list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
	 <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
	 <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
	 <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
	</list></pre>

Example	<pre><list type="litany" rend="simple">
	 <item>God save us from drought.</item>
	 <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
	 <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
	 <item>Praise be to God.</item>
	</list></pre>

Example	The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):
	
	<pre><div1 type="section">
	 <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
	 <list rend="numbered">
	  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with
	     the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over
	     eightpence.
	   <list rend="numbered">
	    <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
	         wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to
	         clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
	    <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is
	         not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
	    <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may
	         then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him
	         that he will desist for ever.</item>
	    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,
	         or to bring him back there.</item>
	    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,
	         whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who
	         supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
	   </list>
	  </item>
	  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom
	     no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a
	     person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
	   <list rend="numbered">
	    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,
	         he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him
	         down as a thief.</item>
	    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild
	         or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
	   </list>
	  </item>
	  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds
	     his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and
	     120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as
	     often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had
	     refused him justice.
	   <list rend="numbered">
	    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes
	         known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first
	         occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
	    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been
	         an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item></pre>

```
        </list>
      </item>
      <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to
         a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is
         afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
    </list>
  </div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example	These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they
	 confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards
	 inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy
	 Cross.
	<list rend="simple">
	  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have
	     subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy
	     Cross.</item>
	  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with
	     the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
	  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the
	     sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
	  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the
	     sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
	  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of
	     the Holy Cross.</item>
	  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>
	  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
	  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy
	     Cross.</item>
	</list>

Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Content model	<pre><content>\n <sequence>\n <alternate minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.divTop"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"/>\n <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </alternate>\n <alternate>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <elementRef key="item"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </sequence>\n <sequence>\n <elementRef key="headLabel"\n minOccurs="0"/>\n <elementRef key="headItem"\n minOccurs="0"/>\n <sequence minOccurs="1"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <elementRef key="label"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n <elementRef key="item"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </sequence>\n </sequence>\n </alternate>\n <sequence minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded">\n <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>\n <classRef key="model.global"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </sequence>\n </sequence>\n</content></pre>
Schema Declaration	```\nelement list\n{\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n tei_att.sortable.attributes,\n tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,\n```

```
                                           attribute type
                                           {
                                             "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
                                           }?,
                                           (
                                             ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global | tei_desc* )*,
                                             (
                                               ( tei_item, tei_model.global* )+
                                             | (
                                                 headLabel?,
                                                 headItem?,
                                                 ( label, tei_model.global*, tei_item, tei_model.global* )+
                                               )
                                             ),
                                             ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
                                           )
                                         }
```

2.1.57. <listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]			
Module	core		
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default)		
	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**commentary**
	subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**werke** **werke-jp**
Member of	model.biblLike		
Contained by	**core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence sourceDesc **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** person place **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied		
May contain	**core:** bibl cb desc head lb listBibl milestone pb **linking:** anchor **msdescription:** msDesc **transcr:** fw		
Example	```<listBibl>```		

```
<head>Works consulted</head>
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
  Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
<biblStruct>
 <analytic>
  <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
 </analytic>
 <monogr>
  <title>The Penny Histories</title>
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
  <imprint>
   <publisher>OUP</publisher>
   <date>1968</date>
  </imprint>
 </monogr>
</biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| Schema Declaration | |
| | ```
element listBibl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute type { "commentary" }?,
   attribute subtype { "werke" | "werke-jp" }?,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      tei_desc*,
      ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*,
      (
         tei_model.biblLike+,
         ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*
      )+
   )
}
``` |

2.1.58. <listPerson>

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
	Derived from	att.typed
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Suggested values include:	commentary

Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** listPerson **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** desc head **namesdates:** listPerson person
Note	The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

Example	<pre><listPerson type="respondents">
	 <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
	 <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
	 <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
	 <listRelation>
	  <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
	   mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
	 </listRelation>
	</listPerson></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	  <classRef key="model.headLike"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="1"/>
	   <elementRef key="listRelation"
	    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	  </alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <alternate minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded">
	    <classRef key="model.personLike"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	    <elementRef key="listPerson"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	   </alternate>
	   <alternate minOccurs="0"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded">
	    <elementRef key="relation"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	    <elementRef key="listRelation"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	   </alternate>
	  </sequence>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element listPerson
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,</pre>

```
        tei_att.declarable.attributes,
        tei_att.sortable.attributes,
        attribute type { "commentary" }?,
        (
          tei_model.headLike*,
          tei_desc*,
          ( relation | listRelation )*,
          (
            ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPerson )+,
            ( relation | listRelation )*
          )+
        )
      }
```

2.1.59. <listPlace>

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
	Derived from att.typed
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Suggested values include: commentary

Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** listPlace place **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** desc head **namesdates:** listPlace place

Example	```xml
	<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
	 <place>
	  <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
	 </place>
	 <place>
	  <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
	 </place>
	</listPlace>
	``

Content model	```xml
	<content>
	 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	  <classRef key="model.headLike"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="1"/>
	   <elementRef key="listRelation"
	    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
	  </alternate>
	``

```
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <alternate minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"
         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listPlace"
         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
       </alternate>
       <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="relation"
         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
       </alternate>
      </sequence>
     </sequence>
    </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element listPlace
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute type { "commentary" }?,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      tei_desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      (
         ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace )+,
         ( relation | listRelation )*
      )+
   )
}
``` |
|---|---|

2.1.60. \<listWit\>

\<listWit\> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence sourceDesc **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **textcrit:** listWit witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** desc head **textcrit:** listWit witness

Note	May contain a series of \<witness\> or \<listWit\> elements.
	    The provision of a \<listWit\> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus.
	    Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single \<listWit\> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the \<witStart\> and \<witEnd\> elements described in section 12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses.
	    Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single \<listWit\> element.

Example	
| | ```xml
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
 <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
 <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
  (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
</listWit>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```xml
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="witness"/>
   <elementRef key="listWit"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element listWit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   ( tei_model.headLike?, tei_desc*, ( tei_witness | tei_listWit )+ )
}
``` |

2.1.61. <metamark>

<metamark> contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [11.3.4.2. Metamarks]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
	function describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the metamark.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.word
	target identifies one or more elements to which the metamark applies.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
Member of	model.global
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno

	linking: anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Example	```
	<surface>
	 <metamark function="used" rend="line"
	  target="#X2"/>
	 <zone xml:id="zone-X2">
	  <line>I am that halfgrown <add>angry</add> boy, fallen asleep</line>
	  <line>The tears of foolish passion yet undried</line>
	  <line>upon my cheeks.</line>
	<!-- ... -->
	  <line>I pass through <add>the</add> travels and ~~fortunes~~ of
	  <retrace>thirty</retrace>
	  </line>
	  <line>years and become old,</line>
	  <line>Each in its due order comes and goes,</line>
	  <line>And thus a message for me comes.</line>
	  <line>The</line>
	 </zone>
	 <metamark function="used"
	  target="#zone-X2">Entered - Yes</metamark>
	</surface>
	``

Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element metamark
	{
	   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
	   tei_att.placement.attributes,
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   attribute function { text }?,
	   attribute target { list { + } }?,
	   tei_macro.specialPara
	}
	``

2.1.62. <milestone>

<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	Empty element

Note	For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which <u><milestone></u> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.
Example	``` <milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/> ... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ... ```
Content model	``` <content> <empty/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element milestone
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_att.edition.attributes,
	   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
	   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
	   empty
	}
	``

2.1.63. <mod>

<mod> represents any kind of modification identified within a single document. [11.3.4.1. Generic Modification]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) att.transcription-<u>al</u> (@status, @cause, @seq) (<u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant)) (<u>att.written</u> (@hand)) <u>at-t.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.spanning</u> (@spanTo) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @ex-tent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	<u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>item</u> <u>l</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>edition</u> <u>licence</u> **linking:** <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>accMat</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textstructure:** <u>byline</u> <u>closer</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>desc</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>list</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>figure</u> <u>formula</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>ex</u> <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	``` <mod type="subst"> <add>pleasing</add> ~~agreable~~ </mod> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> ```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element mod
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent
}
``` |
|---|---|

2.1.64. <msDesc>

<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as an early printed book. [10.1. Overview]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.typed (type, @subtype)

rend   (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Derived from	att.global.rendition	
Status	Optional	
Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace	
Legal values are:	**concept**	
	copy	
	manuscript	
	manuscript-Copy	

type   characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from	att.typed	
Status	Optional	
Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
Legal values are:	**base-Text**	
	witness-Text	

Member of	model.biblLike
Contained by	**core:** add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence sourceDesc **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** person place **textcrit:** witness

	textstructure: body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** head p **msdescription:** msIdentifier physDesc
Note	Although the <msDesc> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fascicles, epigraphs, or any text-bearing objects that require substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general `<object>` may be more suitable.
Example	```\n<msDesc>\n <msIdentifier>\n <settlement>Oxford</settlement>\n <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>\n <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>\n </msIdentifier>\n <msContents>\n <msItem>\n <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>\n <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>\n </msItem>\n </msContents>\n <physDesc>\n <objectDesc>\n A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx\n 28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires. \n The pages are margined and ruled throughout. \n Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44\n folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the\n remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand. \n </objectDesc>\n </physDesc>\n</msDesc>\n```
Content model	```\n<content>\n <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\n <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>\n <classRef key="model.headLike"\n minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\n <classRef key="model.pLike"\n minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\n <elementRef key="msContents"\n minOccurs="0"/>\n <elementRef key="physDesc"\n minOccurs="0"/>\n <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>\n <elementRef key="additional"\n minOccurs="0"/>\n <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\n <elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n <elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"\n maxOccurs="unbounded"/>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n </alternate>\n </sequence>\n</content>\n```
Schema Declaration	```\nelement msDesc\n{\n tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,\n tei_att.global.attribute.n,\n tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,\n tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,\n tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,\n tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,\n tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,\n tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,\n tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,\n tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,\n tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,\n tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,\n tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,\n```

```
            tei_att.sortable.attributes,
            tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
            tei_att.declaring.attributes,
            tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
            attribute rend
            {
                list { ( "concept" | "copy" | "manuscript" | "manuscriptCopy" )+ }
            }?,
            attribute type { "baseText" | "witnessText" }?,
            (
                tei_msIdentifier,
                tei_model.headLike*,
                (
                    tei_model.pLike+
                | (
                    msContents?,
                    tei_physDesc?,
                    history?,
                    additional?,
                    ( msPart* | msFrag* )
                )
                )
            )
        }
```

2.1.65. <msIdentifier>

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	**core:** bibl **msdescription:** msDesc
May contain	**header:** idno **msdescription:** collection institution **namesdates:** country placeName

Example	<pre><msIdentifier>
	 <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
	 <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
	 <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
	</msIdentifier></pre>

Schematron	<sch:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or lo-cal-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</sch:report>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence>
	  <sequence>
	   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"
	    expand="sequenceOptional"/>
	   <elementRef key="institution"
	    minOccurs="0"/>
	   <elementRef key="repository"
	    minOccurs="0"/>
	   <elementRef key="collection"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   <elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <elementRef key="msName"/>
	   <elementRef key="objectName"/>
	   <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element msIdentifier
	{</pre>

```
              tei_att.global.attributes,
              (
                (
                  tei_placeName?,
                  tei_country?,
                  tei_institution?,
                  repository?,
                  tei_collection*,
                  tei_idno*
                ),
                ( msName | objectName | altIdentifier )*
              )
            }
```

2.1.66. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**reg**

Member of	model.nameLike.agent model.personPart
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp respStmt sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person place placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example	`<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>`
	`<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>`
	`<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>`
	`<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>`

Content model	`<content>`

```
    <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
    </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element name
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "reg" }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

2.1.67. <note>

<table>
<tr>
<td colspan="2"><note> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module</td>
<td>core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

<table>
<tr><td>type</td><td colspan="2">characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Derived from</td><td>att.typed</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Datatype</td><td>teidata.enumerated</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Suggested values include:</td><td>re-markRe-spon-s-abil-ity</td></tr>
</table>
</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member of</td>
<td>model.correspActionPart model.correspContextPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contained by</td>
<td>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp respStmt sic term title unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: correspAction correspContext correspDesc edition licence notesStmt
linking: seg
msdescription: accMat collection institution
namesdates: country forename orgName persName person place placeName surname
textcrit: witness
textstructure: body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer
transcr: fw metamark mod supplied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May contain</td>
<td>core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname
textcrit: listWit
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied
character data</td>
</tr>
</table>

Example	In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":
	``` And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. </note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance. <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <respStmt xml:id="MDMH"> <resp>translation from German to English</resp> <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name> </respStmt> ```
	For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.
Example	The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:
	``` Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. ```
	However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element note
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   attribute type { "remarkResponsability" }?,
	   tei_macro.specialPara
	}
	``

2.1.68. <notesStmt>

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: note
Note	Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.
Example	``` <notesStmt> <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note> <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note> </notesStmt> ```
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.noteLike"/> <elementRef key="relatedItem"/> </alternate> ```

```
          </content>
```

| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element notesStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.noteLike | relatedItem )+
}
``` |

2.1.69. <num>

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]	

Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.typed (type, @subtype)

	type	indicates the type of numeric value.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5
			ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st
			fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters
			percentage a percentage
		Note	If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.
	value	supplies the value of the number in standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
		Values	a numeric value.
		Note	The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype teidata.numeric.

Member of	model.measureLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula

	header: idno
	linking: anchor seg
	namesdates: country forename orgName persName placeName surname
	textstructure: floatingText
	transcr: ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied
	character data
Note	Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example	`<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on`
	`my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>`
	`<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>`
	`</num> cm per second.</p>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element num` `{` `   tei_att.global.attributes,` `   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,` `   tei_att.ranging.attributes,` ` attribute type { "cardinal"	"ordinal"	"fraction"	"percentage" }?,` ` attribute value { text }?,` ` tei_macro.phraseSeq` `}`

2.1.70. <opener>

<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divTopPart
Contained by	**core:** list **textstructure:** body div postscript
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline dateline salute signed **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data

Example	`<opener>`
	` <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>`
	`</opener>`

Example	`<opener>`
	` <dateline>`
	`  <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>`
	`  <date>November 11, 1848</date>`
	` </dateline>`
	` <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>`
	`</opener>`
	`<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from`
	` earlier enquiring...</p>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`

```
            <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
            <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
            <elementRef key="argument"/>
            <elementRef key="byline"/>
            <elementRef key="dateline"/>
            <elementRef key="epigraph"/>
            <elementRef key="salute"/>
            <elementRef key="signed"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
          </alternate>
        </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element opener
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.phrase
    | argument
    | tei_byline
    | tei_dateline
    | epigraph
    | tei_salute
    | tei_signed
    | tei_model.global
  )*
}
``` |

2.1.71. <orgName>

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp respStmt sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary"
  <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society
``` |

```
</orgName> [...]
```

Content model	
	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```
Schema Declaration	

	``
	element orgName
	{
	    tei_att.global.attributes,
	    tei_att.datable.attributes,
	    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
	    tei_att.personal.attributes,
	    tei_att.typed.attributes,
	    tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

2.1.72. <orig>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone: ``` <l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l> <l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig> </l> ```
Example	More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element: ``` <l>But this will be a <choice> <orig>meere</orig> <reg>mere</reg> </choice> confusion</l> <l>And hardly shall we all be <choice> <orig>vnderstoode</orig> <reg>understood</reg> </choice> </l> ```
Content model	``` <content> ```

```
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	
	`element orig { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }`

2.1.73. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.pLike
Contained by	**core:** item note quote **figures:** cell figure **header:** availability correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt licence publicationStmt sourceDesc **msdescription:** accMat handDesc msDesc physDesc **namesdates:** person place **textstructure:** body div postscript **transcr:** metamark
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	<pre> Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you done?</q> <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf. <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said. <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q> </pre>
Schematron	<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report>
Schematron	<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:figure |parent::tei:note)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element p
	{</pre>

```
        tei_att.global.attributes,
        tei_att.declaring.attributes,
        tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
        tei_att.written.attributes,
        tei_macro.paraContent
    }
```

2.1.74. <pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l list listBibl name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure table **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textstructure:** body byline closer dateline div floatingText opener postscript salute signed text trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod subst supplied
May contain	Empty element
Note	A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.
Example	Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text. <pre> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </pre>

Example	A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute
	<pre><body>
	 <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
	<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
	                        the text it contains is encoded here -->
	
	<!-- ... -->
	
	 <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
	<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
	
	<!-- ... -->
	
	</body></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <empty/>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element pb
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_att.edition.attributes,
	   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
	   tei_att.breaking.attributes,</pre>

```
       empty
    }
```

2.1.75. <persName>

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp respStmt sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	```<persName>\n <forename>Edward</forename>\n <forename>George</forename>\n <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of\n <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>\n </roleName>\n</persName>```
Content model	```<content>\n <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>\n</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element persName\n{\n tei_att.canonical.attributes,\n tei_att.global.attributes,\n tei_macro.phraseSeq\n}```

2.1.76. <person>

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]		
Module	namesdates	
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)	
	rend	(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

		Derived from	att.global.rendition
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
		Legal values are:	**Fußnote**
			Lesarten
	role	specifies a primary role or classification for the person.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
		Note	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.
	sex	specifies the sex of the person.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace
		Note	Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.
	gender	specifies the gender of the person.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace
		Note	Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.
	age	specifies an age group for the person.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Note	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

Member of	model.personLike
Contained by	**namesdates:** listPerson
May contain	**core:** bibl cb gap lb listBibl milestone name note p pb ptr **figures:** figure **header:** idno **linking:** anchor **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** persName **transcr:** fw metamark space
Note	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class.
Example	```<person sex="F" age="adult"> Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French status B2. </person>```
Example	```<person sex="intersex" role="god" age="immortal"><persName>Hermaphroditos</persName><persName xml:lang="grc">##µ#########</persName>```

Example	```xml
	<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="M" role="poet">
	 <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
	 <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
	 <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>
	  <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
	  <country key="IT">Italy</country>
	 </placeName>
	 </birth>
	 <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
	  <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
	  <country key="RO">Romania</country>
	 </placeName>
	 </death>
	</person>
	``

Example	The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.
	
	``xml
	<person xml:id="ariel" gender="U">
	 <persName>Ariel</persName>
	 <note>Character in <title level="m">The Tempest</title>.</note>
	</person>
	``

Content model	```xml
	<content>
	 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
	   <classRef key="model.global"/>
	   <elementRef key="ptr"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element person
	{
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
	   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
	   attribute rend { list { ("Fußnote" | "Lesarten")+ } }?,
	   attribute role { list { + } }?,
	   attribute sex { list { + } }?,
	   attribute gender { list { + } }?,
	   attribute age { text }?,
	   (
	      tei_model.pLike+
	
		(tei_model.personPart | tei_model.global | tei_ptr)*
		   )
		}
		``

2.1.77. <physDesc>

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the **model.physDescPart** class. [10.7. Physical Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**msdescription:** msDesc
May contain	**core:** p **msdescription:** accMat handDesc

Example	```xml
	<physDesc>
	 <objectDesc form="codex">
	``

```
            <supportDesc material="perg">
             <support>Parchment.</support>
             <extent>i + 55 leaves
             <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"
                unit="inch">
                <height>7¼</height>
                <width>5#</width>
              </dimensions>
             </extent>
            </supportDesc>
            <layoutDesc>
             <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
            </layoutDesc>
           </objectDesc>
           <handDesc>
            <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
           </handDesc>
           <decoDesc>
            <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
           </decoDesc>
          </physDesc>
```

Content model	
	``<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<classRef key="model.physDescPart"
expand="sequenceOptional"/>
</sequence>
</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element physDesc
{
tei_att.global.attributes,
(tei_model.pLike*, tei_handDesc?, tei_accMat?)
}```

2.1.78. <place>

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.placeLike
Contained by	**namesdates:** listPlace place
May contain	**core:** bibl desc head listBibl name note p ptr **header:** idno **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country listPlace place placeName
Example	```<place>
<country>Lithuania</country>
<country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
<place>
<settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
</place>
<place>
<settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
</place>
</place>```
Content model	```<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.headLike"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
<classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>
<classRef key="model.eventLike"/>```

```
      <elementRef key="name"/>
     </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
     <elementRef key="idno"/>
     <elementRef key="ptr"/>
     <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
     <elementRef key="link"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
     <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element place
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
         tei_model.pLike*
       | (
            tei_model.labelLike
          | tei_model.placeStateLike
          | tei_model.eventLike
          | tei_name
         )*
      ),
      (
         tei_model.noteLike
       | tei_model.biblLike
       | tei_idno
       | tei_ptr
       | linkGrp
       | link
      )*,
      ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace )*
   )
}
``` |

2.1.79. \<placeName\>

\<placeName\> (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global.responsibility (cert, @resp)
	cert · · · (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

	Derived from	att.global.responsibility
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.probCert
	Legal values are:	**high**
		low
		medium

Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear
	figures: cell

	header: correspAction edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution msIdentifier **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName place placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	``` <placeName> <settlement>Rochester</settlement> <region>New York</region> </placeName> ```
Example	``` <placeName> <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName> <region>Argylshire</region> </placeName> ```
Example	``` <placeName> <measure>10 miles</measure> <offset>Northeast of</offset> <settlement>Attica</settlement> </placeName> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element placeName
	{
	   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
	   tei_att.global.linking.attributes,
	   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   attribute cert { "high"
		"low"	"medium" }?,
			   tei_macro.phraseSeq
			}
			``

2.1.80. <postscript>

**<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divBottomPart
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body div postscript
May contain	**core:** bibl cb cit desc gap head l lb list listBibl milestone note p pb quote **figures:** figure table **linking:** anchor **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** listPerson listPlace **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

	transcr: fw metamark space
| **Example** | ```
<div type="letter">
 <opener>
  <dateline>
   <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
   <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
 </opener>
 <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
  logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
  the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
  axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
  <signed>Seymour</signed>
 </closer>
 <postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
 </postscript>
</div>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element postscript
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divTopPart )*,
      tei_model.common,
      ( tei_model.global | tei_model.common )*,
      ( tei_model.divBottomPart, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
``` |

2.1.81. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** correspDesc textClass
Note	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.
| **Example** | ```
<profileDesc>
 <langUsage>
  <language ident="fr">French</language>
``` |

```
   </langUsage>
   <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
   </textDesc>
   <settingDesc>
    <setting>
     <name>Paris, France</name>
     <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
   </settingDesc>
  </profileDesc>
```

Content model	
	``<content>
<classRef key="model.profileDescPart"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element profileDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* }```

2.1.82. <ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]			
Module	core		
Attributes	att.pointing (targetLang, evaluate, @target)		
	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	prev
			next
	subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
		Derived from	att.typed
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	brief
			um-feld-brief
Member of	model.ptrLike		
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspContext edition licence publicationStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName person place placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied		

May contain	Empty element
Example	``` <ptr target="#p143 #p144"/> <ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/> <ptr cRef="1.3.4"/> ```
Schematron	<sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report>
Content model	``` <content> <empty/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element ptr
	{
	   attribute type { "prev"
		"next" }?,
		   attribute subtype { "brief"
			"umfeldbrief" }?,
			   tei_att.pointing.attribute.target,
			   empty
			}
			``

2.1.83. <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	``` <publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date> </publicationStmt> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element pubPlace
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.naming.attributes,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

2.1.84. <publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** address date p ptr pubPlace publisher ref **header:** availability idno
Note	Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmt-Part.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example	<pre><publicationStmt>
	 <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
	 <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
	 <date when="1846"/>
	</publicationStmt></pre>

Example	<pre><publicationStmt>
	 <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
	 <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
	 <availability>
	   Available under licence only
	 </availability>
	 <date when="1992">1992</date>
	</publicationStmt></pre>

Example	<pre><publicationStmt>
	 <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
	 <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
	 <date>2017</date>
	 <availability>
	   This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.
	 </availability>
	 <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
	</publicationStmt></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
	   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element publicationStmt
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   (
	      (
	         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency,
	         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail*
	      )+
	
		tei_model.pLike+
		   )
		}</pre>

2.1.85. <publisher>

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

	(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
Example	``` <imprint> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher> <date>1987</date> </imprint> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element publisher
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

2.1.86. <quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig p pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc

	namesdates: [country](#) [forename](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [surname](#)
	textcrit: [listWit](#)
	textstructure: [floatingText](#)
	transcr: [ex](#) [fw](#) [metamark](#) [mod](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)
	character data
Note	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the [<cit>](#) element.
Example	```Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote> <ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element quote { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes, tei_att.notated.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }```

2.1.87. <ref>

	<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]
Module	core
Attributes	[att.cReferencing](#) (@cRef) [att.declaring](#) (@decls) [att.global](#) (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ([att.global.rendition](#) (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ([att.global.linking](#) (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ([att.global.facs](#) (@facs)) ([att.global.change](#) (@change)) ([att.global.responsibility](#) (@cert, @resp)) ([att.global.source](#) (@source)) [att.pointing](#) (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.	
		Derived from	[att.typed](#)
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	[teidata.enumerated](#)
		Legal values are:	con-textLet-ter
			let-ter
			miss-in-gLet-ter
			next
			prev
	subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
		Derived from	[att.typed](#)
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	[teidata.enumerated](#)

	Legal values are: com-ment
	doc-u-ment
	pas-sage
	text
Member of	model.ptrLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** correspContext edition licence publicationStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example	<pre>See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second
	 sentence</ref></pre>

Example	<pre>See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term>
	</ref>.</pre>

Schematron	<sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <sch:name/> </sch:report>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element ref
	{
	   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
	   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
	   attribute type
	   {
	      "contextLetter" | "letter" | "missingLetter" | "next" | "prev"
	   }?,
	   attribute subtype { "comment" | "document" | "passage" | "text" }?,
	   tei_macro.paraContent
	}</pre>

2.1.88. <resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Contained by	**core:** respStmt
May contain	**core:** abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr ref term title **figures:** figure **header:** idno **linking:** anchor **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **transcr:** ex fw metamark space subst character data
Note	The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.
Example	``` <respStmt> <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name> </respStmt> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element resp
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
	   tei_att.datable.attributes,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
	}
	``

2.1.89. <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**core:** bibl **header:** editionStmt titleStmt
May contain	**core:** name note resp **namesdates:** orgName persName
Example	``` <respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> ```

	`<persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>` `</respStmt>`

Example	`<respStmt>`
	`<resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>`
	`<name>Alan Morrison</name>`
	`</respStmt>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`
	`<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`
	`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`
	`<elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</sequence>`
	`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`
	`<classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`<elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</sequence>`
	`</alternate>`
	`<elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element respStmt` `{` `  tei_att.canonical.attributes,` `  (` `    (` `      ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.agent+ )` `	(tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei_resp+)` `),` ` tei_note*` `)` `}`

2.1.90. <row>

<row> (row) contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]	
Module	figures
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)
Contained by	**figures:** table
May contain	**figures:** cell

Example	`<row role="data">`
	`<cell role="label">Classics</cell>`
	`<cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>`
	`</row>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element row`
	`{`
	`  tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`  tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,`
	`  tei_cell+`
	`}`

2.1.91. <salute>

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]	
Module	textstructure

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divWrapper
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body closer div opener
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element salute
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.written.attributes,
	   tei_macro.paraContent
	}
	``

2.1.92. <seg>

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	linking
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat, @targetDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.choicePart model.segLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg

	msdescription: msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	The \<seg\> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a \<ptr\> or other similar element.
Example	`<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>` `<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>`

Example	`<s>`
	`  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the ballfield.`
	`</s>`

Example	`<seg type="preamble">`
	`<seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in Frankish country.</seg>`
	`<seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>`
	`<seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>`
	`</seg>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element seg`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.segLike.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.typed.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.written.attributes,`
	`   tei_att.notated.attributes,`
	`   tei_macro.paraContent`
	`}`

2.1.93. \<sic\>

\<sic\> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText

	transcr: ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
for his nose was as sharp as
 a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
``` |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:<br>```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
 — how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
``` |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:<br>```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
 — how <choice>
<sic>we can</sic>
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
``` |
| **Example** | ```
for his nose was as sharp as
 a pen, and <choice>
<sic>a Table</sic>
<corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element sic { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
``` |

2.1.94. <signed>

	<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body closer div opener postscript
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<closer>
 <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
 <list>
   <item>John Bull,</item>
   <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
 </list>
 </signed>
</closer>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
``` |

| Schema Declaration | ```
element signed
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent
}
``` |
|---|---|

2.1.95. <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** bibl listBibl p **msdescription:** msDesc **textcrit:** listWit
| **Example** | ```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
<publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<sourceDesc>
 <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="listWit" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="p" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="bibl" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="msDesc" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="listBibl" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element sourceDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   ( tei_listWit?, tei_p?, tei_bibl?, tei_msDesc?, tei_listBibl? )
}
``` |

2.1.96. <space>

<space> (space) indicates the location of a significant space in the text. [11.4.1. Space]		
Module	transcr	
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (resp, @cert) att.global.source (@source) att.dimensions (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)	
	resp	(responsible party) (responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space
		Derived from att.global.responsibility

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	unit		names the unit used for the measurement
		Derived from	<u>att.dimensions</u>
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Sample values include	section
	dim		(dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.
		Status	Recommended
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Legal values are:	horizontal the space is horizontal. vertical the space is vertical.
		Note	For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical.

Member of	<u>model.global.edit</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>cit</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>item</u> <u>l</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> <u>figure</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>edition</u> <u>licence</u> **linking:** <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>accMat</u> <u>collection</u> <u>institution</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>person</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textstructure:** <u>body</u> <u>byline</u> <u>closer</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>div</u> <u>floatingText</u> <u>opener</u> <u>postscript</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>text</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>desc</u>
Note	This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.
Example	`By god if wommen had writen storyes` `  As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/> han within her oratoryes`
Example	`########<space quantity="1" unit="chars"/>##`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element space`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.n,`

```
      tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
      tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
      tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
      tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
      tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
      tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
      tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
      tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
      tei_att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
      tei_att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
      tei_att.dimensions.attribute.precision,
      tei_att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
      tei_att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,
      tei_att.ranging.attribute.atMost,
      tei_att.ranging.attribute.min,
      tei_att.ranging.attribute.max,
      tei_att.ranging.attribute.confidence,
      attribute resp { list { + } }?,
      attribute unit { text }?,
      attribute dim { "horizontal" | "vertical" }?,
      ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
   }
```

2.1.97. <subst>

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** add cb del lb milestone pb **linking:** anchor **transcr:** fw

Example	`... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>`
	`<subst>`
	` <add>T</add>`
	` <del>t</del>`
	`</subst>he expressed`

Example	`that he and his Sister Mi#s D — <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be <subst>`
	`<del>very</del>`
	`<lb/>`
	`<add>principally</add>`
	`</subst> remembered in her Will.`

Example	`<ab>#<subst>`
	`  <add place="above">##</add>`
	`  <del>#</del>`

```
    </subst>
#########<subst>
 <add place="above">##</add>
 <del>#</del>
    </subst>
#########<subst>
 <add place="above">##</add>
 <del>#</del>
    </subst>
</ab>
```

| Example | ```
<subst>
 <del>
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
   unit="character"/>
 </del>
 <add>apple</add>
</subst>
``` |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"> <sch:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="add"/>
  <elementRef key="surplus"/>
  <elementRef key="del"/>
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element subst
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   ( tei_add | surplus | tei_del | tei_model.milestoneLike )+
}
``` |

2.1.98. <supplied>

<supplied> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]			
Module	transcr		
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))		
	reason	one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional		
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied		
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear		

	figures: <u>figure</u> <u>formula</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>ex</u> <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	The \<damage\>, <u>\<gap\></u>, <u>\<del\></u>, <u>\<unclear\></u> and <u>\<supplied\></u> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

Example	<pre>I am dr Sr yr
	\<supplied reason="illegible"
	 source="#amanuensis_copy"\>very humble Servt\</supplied\>
	 Sydney Smith</pre>

Example	<pre>\<supplied reason="omitted-in-original"\>Dedication\</supplied\> to the duke of Bejar</pre>

Content model	<pre>\<content\>
	 \<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/\>
	\</content\></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element supplied
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
	   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
	   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
	   tei_macro.paraContent
	}</pre>

2.1.99. \<surname\>

\<surname\> (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.personal</u> (@full, @sort) (<u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) (<u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref))) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>item</u> <u>l</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>correspAction</u> <u>edition</u> <u>licence</u> **linking:** <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>accMat</u> <u>collection</u> <u>institution</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textcrit:** <u>witness</u> **textstructure:** <u>byline</u> <u>closer</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>figure</u> <u>formula</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> <u>seg</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u>

	transcr: ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element surname
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.personal.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

2.1.100. <table>

colspan	**<table>** (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]
Module	figures
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

rows	(rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.count
	Note	If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows. Rows should be presented from top to bottom.
cols	(columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.count
	Note	If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns. Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p quote ref sic title unclear **figures:** cell figure **header:** licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** cb gap graphic head lb milestone note pb **figures:** figure formula row **linking:** anchor **textstructure:** byline closer dateline postscript salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark space
Note	Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.
Example	``` <table rows="4" cols="4"> <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head> <row role="label"> <cell role="data"/> ```

```
 <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
 <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
 <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
 <cell role="data">5</cell>
 <cell role="data">8</cell>
 <cell role="data">128</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
 <cell role="data">3</cell>
 <cell role="data">6</cell>
 <cell role="data">36</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
 <cell role="data">3</cell>
 <cell role="data">5</cell>
 <cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
 <cell role="data">1</cell>
 <cell role="data">11</cell>
 <cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>
```

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="row"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element table
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute rows { text }?,
   attribute cols { text }?,
   (
      ( tei_model.headLike | tei_model.global )*,
      (
        ( tei_row, tei_model.global* )+
      | ( tei_model.graphicLike, tei_model.global* )+
      ),
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
``` |

2.1.101. <teiCorpus>

<teiCorpus> (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <u>TEI</u> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	core

Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

	version	(version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.version
		Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.

Member of	model.describedResource

Contained by	**core:** teiCorpus

May contain	**core:** teiCorpus **header:** teiHeader **textstructure:** TEI text **transcr:** facsimile

Note	Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.

Example	``` <teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <!-- header for corpus --> </teiHeader> <TEI> <teiHeader> <!-- header for first text --> </teiHeader> <text> <!-- content of first text --> </text> </TEI> <TEI> <teiHeader> <!-- header for second text --> </teiHeader> <text> <!-- content of second text --> </text> </TEI> <!-- more TEI elements here --> </teiCorpus> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
	  <classRef key="model.resource"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <classRef key="model.describedResource"
	   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element teiCorpus
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   attribute version { text }?,
	   (tei_teiHeader, tei_model.resource*, tei_model.describedResource+)
	}
	``

2.1.102. <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**core:** teiCorpus **textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**header:** fileDesc profileDesc
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Example	```
	<teiHeader>
	 <fileDesc>
	  <titleStmt>
	   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
	   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
	   <respStmt>
	    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
	    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
	   </respStmt>
	   <respStmt>
	    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
	    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
	   </respStmt>
	  </titleStmt>
	  <publicationStmt>
	   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
	   <address>
	    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
	   </address>
	   <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
	   <availability>
	     Freely available on a non-commercial basis.
	   </availability>
	   <date when="1968">1968</date>
	  </publicationStmt>
	  <sourceDesc>
	   <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,
	       1968)</bibl>
	  </sourceDesc>
	 </fileDesc>
	 <encodingDesc>
	  <projectDesc>
	    Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling
	       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the
	       editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).
	  </projectDesc>
	  <editorialDecl>
	   <correction>
	     Turned letters are silently corrected.
	   </correction>
	   <normalization>
	     Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured
	        forms are not encoded.
	   </normalization>
	  </editorialDecl>
	  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
	   <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
	    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
	     A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that
	        listed here: <list>
	      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
	      </item>
	      <item>a period</item>
	      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
	      </item>
	      <item>a space</item>
	      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
	      </item>
	     </list>
	
	   </cRefPattern>
	  </refsDecl>
	 </encodingDesc>
	 <revisionDesc>
	  <list>
	   <item>
	``

```
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
     <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
   </revisionDesc>
  </teiHeader>
```

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"`
	`   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"`
	`   minOccurs="0"/>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element teiHeader`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attributes,`
	`   ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )`
	`}`

2.1.103. <term>

<term> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module	core
Attributes	att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
	corresp **Status** Optional **Datatype** string
	corresp **Status** Optional **Datatype** string
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition keywords licence **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied
May contain	**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Note	When this element appears within an `<index>` element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be

associated with a `<gloss>` element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a `<gloss>` element may point to a <u>`<term>`</u> element by means of its *target* attribute.

In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <u>`<term>`</u> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <u>`<term>`</u> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the **att.canonical** class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

| **Example** | ```
A computational device that infers structure
 from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history
 of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as
<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed
 through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the
 fiction.</gloss>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as
<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed
 through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the
 fiction.</gloss>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element term
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
   attribute corresp { text }?,
   attribute corresp { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

2.1.104. `<text>`

`<text>` (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.written</u> (@hand)
Member of	<u>model.resource</u>

Contained by	core: teiCorpus textstructure: TEI
May contain	**core:** cb gap lb milestone note pb **figures:** figure **linking:** anchor **textstructure:** body **transcr:** fw metamark space
Note	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

Example	<pre><text>
	 <front>
	  <docTitle>
	   <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
	  </docTitle>
	 </front>
	 <body>
	  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
	  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
	 </body>
	</text></pre>

Example	The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:
	<pre><text>
	 <front>
	<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
	 </front>
	 <group>
	  <text>
	<!-- first text -->
	  </text>
	  <text>
	<!-- second text -->
	  </text>
	 </group>
	</text></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence>
	  <classRef key="model.global"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0">
	   <elementRef key="front"/>
	   <classRef key="model.global"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	  <alternate>
	   <elementRef key="body"/>
	   <elementRef key="group"/>
	  </alternate>
	  <classRef key="model.global"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0">
	   <elementRef key="back"/>
	   <classRef key="model.global"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element text
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
	   tei_att.typed.attributes,
	   tei_att.written.attributes,
	   (
	      tei_model.global*,
	      (front, tei_model.global*)?,
	      (tei_body | group),
	      tei_model.global*,
	      (back, tei_model.global*)?
	   )
	}</pre>

2.1.105. <textClass>

\<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**header:** keywords

Example	<pre>\<taxonomy>
	 \<category xml:id="acprose">
	  \<catDesc>Academic prose\</catDesc>
	 \</category>
	\<!-- other categories here -->
	\</taxonomy>
	\<!-- ... -->
	\<textClass>
	 \<catRef target="#acprose"/>
	 \<classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9\</classCode>
	 \<keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
	  \<list>
	   \<item>End of the world\</item>
	   \<item>History - philosophy\</item>
	  \</list>
	 \</keywords>
	\</textClass></pre>

Content model	<pre>\<content>
	 \<alternate minOccurs="0"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  \<elementRef key="classCode"/>
	  \<elementRef key="catRef"/>
	  \<elementRef key="keywords"/>
	 \</alternate>
	\</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element textClass
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
	   (classCode | catRef | tei_keywords)*
	}</pre>

2.1.106. <title>

\<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]		
Module	core	
Attributes	att.global (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.typed (type, @subtype)	
	n	(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
		Derived from att.global
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.text
		Suggested values include: dig-i-tal

		print
type	classifies the title according to some convenient typology.	
	Derived from	att.typed
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are:	**main** main title
		sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
		alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known
		short abbreviated form of title
		desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title
		letter
		missingLetter
		other
		stammbuch
	Note	This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.
level	indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are:	**a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.
		m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works
		j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper
		s

<table>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>(series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection</td></tr>
</table>

	u	(unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)
	Note	The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.
Member of	model.emphLike	
Contained by	**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l name note num orig p pubPlace publisher quote ref resp sic term title unclear **figures:** cell **header:** edition licence titleStmt **linking:** seg **msdescription:** accMat collection institution **namesdates:** country forename orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** byline closer dateline opener salute signed trailer **transcr:** fw metamark mod supplied	
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data	
Note	The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.	

Example	`<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of`
	`a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,`
	`18-21 July 1989</title>`	

Example	`<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable` `edition</title>`	

Example	`<title type="full">`
	`<title type="main">Synthèse</title>`
	`<title type="sub">an international journal for`
	`  epistemology, methodology and history of`
	`  science</title>`
	`</title>`	

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`	

Schema Declaration	`element title`
	`{`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,`
	`   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,`
	`   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,`
	`   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,`	

```
                              tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
                              tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
                              tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
                              tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
                              tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
                              tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
                              tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
                              tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
                              attribute n { "digital" | "print" }?,
                              attribute type
                              {
                                 "main"
                               | "sub"
                               | "alt"
                               | "short"
                               | "desc"
                               | "letter"
                               | "missingLetter"
                               | "other"
                               | "stammbuch"
                              }?,
                              attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
                              tei_macro.paraContent
                           }
```

2.1.107. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** author editor respStmt title
Example	```<titleStmt>` ` <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>` ` <respStmt>` ` <resp>compiled by</resp>` ` <name>P.J. Lucas</name>` ` </respStmt>` `</titleStmt>```
Content model	```<content>` ` <sequence>` ` <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"` ` maxOccurs="unbounded"/>` ` <classRef key="model.respLike"` ` minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>` ` </sequence>` `</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element titleStmt` `{` ` tei_att.global.attributes,` ` (tei_title+, tei_model.respLike*)` `}```

2.1.108. <trailer>

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

	(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divBottomPart
Contained by	**core:** list **figures:** figure table **textstructure:** body div postscript
May contain	**core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l lb list listBibl milestone name note num orig pb ptr quote ref sic term title unclear **figures:** figure formula table **header:** idno **linking:** anchor seg **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex fw metamark mod space subst supplied character data
Example	`<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>`

Example	```<trailer>```
	 ```<l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>```
	 ```<l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>```
	 ``` <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>```
	 ```</trailer>```
	 From EEBO A87070

Content model	```<content>```
	 ``` <alternate minOccurs="0"```
	 ``` maxOccurs="unbounded">```
	 ``` <textNode/>```
	 ``` <elementRef key="lg"/>```
	 ``` <classRef key="model.gLike"/>```
	 ``` <classRef key="model.phrase"/>```
	 ``` <classRef key="model.inter"/>```
	 ``` <classRef key="model.lLike"/>```
	 ``` <classRef key="model.global"/>```
	 ``` </alternate>```
	 ```</content>```

Schema Declaration	```element trailer```
	 ```{```
	 ``` tei_att.global.attributes,```
	 ``` tei_att.typed.attributes,```
	 ``` tei_att.placement.attributes,```
	 ``` tei_att.written.attributes,```
	 ``` (```
	 ``` text```
	 ``` | lg```
	 ``` | tei_model.gLike```
	 ``` | tei_model.phrase```
	 ``` | tei_model.inter```
	 ``` | tei_model.lLike```
	 ``` | tei_model.global```
	 ```)*```
	 ```}```

2.1.109. <unclear>

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace
		Suggested values include:	**illegible** (illegible)
			inaudible (inaudible)
			faded (faded)
			background_noise (background noise)
			eccentric_ductus (eccentric ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

```
<div>
 <head>Rx</head>
 <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
 </p>
</div>
```

		Note	One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.
	agent	Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Sample values include:	**rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
			mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
			smoke damage results from smoke

Member of	<u>model.choicePart</u> <u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>item</u> <u>l</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>edition</u> <u>licence</u> **linking:** <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>accMat</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textstructure:** <u>byline</u> <u>closer</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> <u>salute</u> <u>signed</u> <u>trailer</u> **transcr:** <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>abbr</u> <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>desc</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>list</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>num</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>sic</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u> **figures:** <u>figure</u> <u>formula</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **linking:** <u>anchor</u> <u>seg</u> **msdescription:** <u>msDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>floatingText</u> **transcr:** <u>ex</u> <u>fw</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u>

	character data

Note	The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.
	  The <damage>, <u>gap</u>, <u>del</u>, <u>unclear</u> and <u>supplied</u> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
	  The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example	`<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element unclear
	{
	   tei_att.global.attributes,
	   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
	   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
	   attribute reason
	   {
	      list
	      {
	         (
	            "illegible"
	          | "inaudible"
	          | "faded"
	          | "background_noise"
	          | "eccentric_ductus"
	         )+
	      }
	   }?,
	   attribute agent { text }?,
	   tei_macro.paraContent
	}
	``

2.1.110. <witness>

<witness> (witness) contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Contained by	textcrit: listWit
May contain	**core:** abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi list listBibl name note num ptr quote ref term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **msdescription:** msDesc **namesdates:** country forename listPerson listPlace orgName persName placeName surname **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** floatingText **transcr:** ex subst character data
Note	The content of the <u>witness</u> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

Example	```
	<listWit>
	 <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
	   Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
	   (see further <ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
	</listWit>
	``

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <elementRef key="note"/>
  <elementRef key="object"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| Schema Declaration | |
| | ```
element witness
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.inter | tei_note | object )*
}
``` |

2.2. Model classes

2.2.1. model.addrPart

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	address
Members	model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno] addrLine

2.2.2. model.addressLike

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	address email

2.2.3. model.attributable

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	tei
Used by	cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText

2.2.4. model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	availability
Members	licence

2.2.5. model.biblLike

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei

Used by	cit listBibl model.inter model.personPart place
Members	bibl listBibl msDesc

2.2.6. model.biblPart

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl
Members	model.imprintPart[biblScope pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor respStmt] availability bibl edition msIdentifier

2.2.7. model.choicePart

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	choice
Members	abbr corr ex expan orig seg sic supplied unclear

2.2.8. model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div figure postscript
Members	model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike]
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

2.2.9. model.correspActionPart

model.correspActionPart groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence.	
Module	tei
Used by	correspAction
Members	model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno] note

2.2.10. model.correspContextPart

model.correspContextPart groups elements which may appear as part of the correspContext element	
Module	tei
Used by	correspContext
Members	model.pLike[p] model.ptrLike[ptr ref] note

2.2.11. model.correspDescPart

model.correspDescPart groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence	
Module	tei

Used by	correspDesc
Members	correspAction correspContext note

2.2.12. model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	date

2.2.13. model.descLike

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.	
Module	tei
Used by	gap graphic space
Members	desc

2.2.14. model.describedResource

model.describedResource groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or 'root' element of a TEI-conformant document [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	teiCorpus
Members	TEI teiCorpus

2.2.15. model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div figure list table
Members	model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper[byline dateline salute]

2.2.16. model.divBottomPart

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divBottom postscript
Members	closer postscript signed trailer

2.2.17. model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	div

2.2.18. model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.specialPara model.common

Members	model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p]
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

2.2.19. model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div list
Members	model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener signed] model.divWrapper[byline dateline salute]

2.2.20. model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divTop postscript
Members	model.headLike[head] opener signed

2.2.21. model.divWrapper

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divBottom model.divTop
Members	byline dateline salute

2.2.22. model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	foreign term title

2.2.23. model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	address bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div figure floatingText head l list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener person postscript table text trailer
Members	model.global.edit[gap space] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure metamark

2.2.24. model.global.edit

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	gap space

2.2.25. model.graphicLike

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]	
Module	tei
Used by	cit facsimile figure formula model.phrase table
Members	formula graphic

2.2.26. model.headLike

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.	
Module	tei
Used by	figure listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit model.divTopPart msDesc place table
Members	head

2.2.27. model.hiLike

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	hi

2.2.28. model.highlighted

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]

2.2.29. model.imprintPart

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.biblPart
Members	biblScope pubPlace publisher

2.2.30. model.inter

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	head l macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart trailer witness
Members	model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike

2.2.31. model.lLike

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module	tei
Used by	head model.divPart model.paraPart trailer
Members	l

2.2.32. model.labelLike

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.inter place
Members	desc

2.2.33. model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited witness
Members	model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref]

2.2.34. model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.inter
Members	list listPerson listPlace listWit table

2.2.35. model.measureLike

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	num

2.2.36. model.milestoneLike

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Used by	listBibl model.global subst
Members	anchor cb fw lb milestone pb

2.2.37. model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data

Members	model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.per-sNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country place-Name]] idno
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of re-sponsibility, etc.

2.2.38. model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike respStmt
Members	name orgName persName
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or orga-nizations.

2.2.39. model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global notesStmt place
Members	note

2.2.40. model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	availability correspAction correspDesc editionStmt handDesc model.correspContextPart model.divPart msDesc person physDesc place publicationStmt
Members	p

2.2.41. model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[num] mod-el.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike mod-el.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno]

2.2.42. model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del mod orig sic supplied unclear]

2.2.43. model.pPart.editorial

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcrib-ing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	

Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members	abbr choice ex expan subst

2.2.44. model.pPart.transcriptional

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.edit
Members	add corr del mod orig sic supplied unclear

2.2.45. model.paraPart

model.paraPart groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements [3.1. Paragraphs]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.paraContent
Members	model.gLike model.global[model.global.edit[gap space] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure metamark] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] model.lLike[l] model.phrase[model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del mod orig sic supplied unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[seg] model.specDescLike]

2.2.46. model.persNamePart

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	forename surname

2.2.47. model.persStateLike

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.personPart
Members	persName
Note	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

2.2.48. model.personLike

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	listPerson

Members	person

2.2.49. model.personPart

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	person
Members	model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.eventLike model.persStateLike[persName] idno name

2.2.50. model.phrase

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	byline closer date dateline head l macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener trailer
Members	model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del mod orig sic supplied unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[seg] model.specDescLike
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

2.2.51. model.physDescPart

model.physDescPart groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.	
Module	msdescription
Used by	physDesc
Members	accMat handDesc

2.2.52. model.placeLike

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	listPlace place
Members	place

2.2.53. model.placeNamePart

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.placeStateLike msIdentifier
Members	country placeName

2.2.54. model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei

Used by	model.nameLike place
Members	model.placeNamePart[country placeName]

2.2.55. model.profileDescPart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	profileDesc
Members	correspDesc textClass

2.2.56. model.ptrLike

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl cit model.correspContextPart model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Members	ptr ref

2.2.57. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	publisher
Note	The 'agency' child elements, while not required, are required if one of the 'detail' child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a 'detail' child element without a preceding 'agency' child element. See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

2.2.58. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	model.ptrLike[ptr ref] address availability date idno pubPlace
Note	A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it. See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

2.2.59. model.quoteLike

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.attributable
Members	cit quote

2.2.60. model.resource

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei

Used by	TEI teiCorpus
Members	facsimile text

2.2.61. model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	tei
Used by	editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt
Members	author editor respStmt

2.2.62. model.segLike

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	seg
Note	The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

2.2.63. model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
Module	tei
Used by	teiHeader
Members	profileDesc

2.3. Attribute classes

2.3.1. att.breaking

att.breaking provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]			
Module	tei		
Members	cb lb milestone pb		
Attributes	break	indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.	
		Status	Recommended
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include	**yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
			no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

> **maybe**
>> the encoding does not take any position on this
>> issue.

In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', linebreaks occur
in the middle of the words *l#ðost* and *reord-berendum*.

```
<ab> ...e#esa tome iu ic#æs #e#orden #ita heardo#t .
 leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes
 #e# rihtne #erymde reord be<lb break="no"/>
 rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer...
</ab>
```

2.3.2. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
Module	tei
Members	ref term
Attributes	cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.text
	Note	The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.
		The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.
		Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

2.3.3. att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]	
Module	tei
Members	att.naming[att.personal[forename orgName surname] author collection country editor institution pubPlace] correspDesc date persName placeName publisher resp respStmt term
Attributes	key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.text

```
<author>
 <name key="name 427308"
  type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name>
</author>
```

```
<author>
 <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
  ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

	Note	The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.
		No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a

		situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.
	ref	(reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace
		```<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>```
		Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

2.3.4. att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>author</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>licence</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>resp</u>
Attributes	att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) <u>att.datable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) <u>att.datable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)

	calendar	indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace
		Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.)) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
		```He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).```
		```He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>.```
		Note Note that the *calendar* attribute (unlike *datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized.
	period	supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically `<category>`s or `<calendar>`s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

Note	This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restrict-

ed to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

2.3.5. att.datable.custom

att.datable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.4. Dates]

Module	namesdates
Members	att.datable[author country date editor licence orgName resp]

Attributes	when-custom	supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

<table>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2">Status   Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2">Datatype   1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</td></tr>
</table>

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system

```
<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the
<date when="1040-03-06"
  when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH
 </date>.</p>
<p>The current world will end at the
<date when="2012-12-21"
  when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
 (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date>
</p>
```

Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

	notBefore-custom	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	notAfter-custom	specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	from-custom	indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace

```
<event xml:id="FIRE1"
 datingMethod="#julian"
 from-custom="1666-09-02"
 to-custom="1666-09-05">
 <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
 <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
   of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

	to-custom	indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	datingPoint	supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>

	datingMethod	supplies a pointer to a `<calendar>` element or other means of inter- preting the values of the custom dating attributes.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.pointer

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne
 e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
 calendar="#julian"
 datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
 Citizen of London.
```

In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a `<calendar>` el-
ement for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the
<u><date></u> element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also
points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-
custom* attribute value is Julian too.

```
<date when="1382-06-28"
 when-custom="6890-06-20"
 datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> μ### ####### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num>
</date>
```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured 'from the
creation of the world', which is normalized (in *when*) to the Gregorian
date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable,
numeric version of the date from the Creation.

	Note	Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* de- fined in **att.datable**) defines the calendar or dating sys- tem to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* at- tributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the ele- ment.

2.3.6. att.datable.iso

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601:2004 stan- dard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	namesdates
Members	att.datable[<u>author</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>licence</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>resp</u>]
Attributes	when-iso supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

      Status   Optional

      Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats
that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.

```
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date>
<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time when-iso="14">around two</time>
<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>
```

All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the **att.datable.w3c** class
are also valid with respect to this attribute.

```
He likes to be punctual. I said <q>
 <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>
</q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.
```

The second occurence of `<time>` could have been encoded with the
when attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C
XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first
occurence could not.

  notBefore-iso   specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.
            yyyy-mm-dd.

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.iso
	notAfter-iso	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.iso
	from-iso	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.iso
	to-iso	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.iso
Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.		

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.

If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

2.3.7. att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	att.datable[author country date editor licence orgName resp]
Attributes	when	supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="--08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

```
This list begins in
 the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after
 Pentecost, in that year the
<date calendar="#julian"
when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
```

```
<opener>
<dateline>
 <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
 <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
<salute>To
  Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

	notBefore	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	notAfter	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	from	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	to	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>		
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>		
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>		
Example	`<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>`		
Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.		

2.3.8. att.datcat

att.datcat provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]	

Module	tei		
Members	att.segLike[seg]		
Attributes	datcat	provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If *valueDatcat* is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while *valueDatcat* performs role (b).	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	valueDatcat	provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference	

		to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with *datcat* is needed.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	targetDatcat	provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the *datcat* attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space

| **Example** | The example below presents the TEI encoding of the name-value pair `<part of speech, common noun>`, where the name (key) 'part of speech' is abbreviated as 'POS', and the value, 'common noun' is symbolized by 'NN'. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element `<f>`. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the *name* attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol 'NN'.The *datcat* attribute relates the feature *name* (i.e., the key) to the data category 'part of speech', while the attribute *valueDatcat* relates the feature *value* to the data category *common noun*. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.

```
<fs>
 <f name="POS"
  datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
   <symbol valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545"
    value="NN"/>
 </f>
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

'NN' is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the CLAWS-7 tagset defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the BNC Basic (C5) tagset, uses the symbol 'NN0' (rather than 'NN'). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string 'http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of *common noun*.While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0', and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category 'part of speech', it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the *datcat* attribute to reference a definition of *part of speech*. The reference taxonomy in this example is the CLARIN Concept Registry.If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter .

```
<fs>
 <f name="POS" fVal="#commonNoun"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an `<fsdDecl>` that is XIncluded as a sibling of <u>\<text\></u> or a child of `<encodingDesc>`; a `<taxonomy>` available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option.The example below presents an `<fvLib>` element that collects the relevant |

feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a *tagset*, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.

```
<fvLib n="POS values">
 <symbol xml:id="commonNoun" value="NN"
  datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/>
 <symbol xml:id="properNoun" value="NP"
  datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/>
 <!-- ... -->
</fvLib>
```

Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between *datcat* and *valueDatcat* in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the `<f>`/`<symbol>` complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.

Example	In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the `<pos>` element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of <f name="POS"> above.

```
<gramGrp>
 <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
  valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545">NN</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of `<tagUsage>`, although here, the *valueDatcat* attribute should be used, because it is not the `<tagUsage>` element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element `<pos>` (or `<case>`, etc.) that is described by `<tagUsage>`:

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
<!-- ... -->
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="pos"
   targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">Contains the part
  <tagUsage gi="case"
   targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-7270e215f039">Contains informat
<!-- ... -->
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the `<prefixDef>` mechanism, as illustrated below:

```
<listPrefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="pos"
  replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/>
 <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="adj"
  replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-3df2d6499157"/>
</listPrefixDef>
<!-- ... -->
<entry>
<!--...-->
 <form>
  <orth>isotope</orth>
 </form>
 <gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="ccr:pos"
   valueDatcat="ccr:adj">adj</pos>
 </gramGrp>
<!--...-->
</entry>
```

This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers 'pos' and 'adj' belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised.Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in `<equiv>` element that is a child of `<elementSpec>` or `<attDef>`.

Example	The *targetDatcat* attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the *targetLang* attribute of the att.pointing class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.
	``
	<fDecl name="POS"
	targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
	<fDescr>part of speech (morphosyntactic category)</fDescr>
	<vRange>
	<vAlt>
	<symbol value="NN"
	datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545"/>
	<symbol value="NP"
	datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/>
	<!-- ... -->
	</vAlt>
	</vRange>
	</fDecl>
	``
	Above, the `<fDecl>` uses *targetDatcat*, because if it were to use *datcat*, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category *part of speech*, whereas it is not — it models a container (`<f>`) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the `<f>` that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of *datcat* in the `<symbol>` element.
Note	The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.
	A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitues the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.
	In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair `<part-of-speech,common-noun>`, namely `<pos>commonNoun</pos>` and `pos="common-noun"`, one would classify the element `<pos>` and the attribute *pos* as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of `<pos>` or the value of *pos* would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.
	The att.datcat class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the `<pos>` element and the *pos* attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept *part of speech*).
	The value of the att.datcat attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, CLARIN CCR, OLiA, or TermWeb's DatCatInfo, and also the Universal Dependencies inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.
	Historically, *datcat* and *valueDatcat* originate from the (the now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI att.datcat as an example.
	Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of att.datcat attributes: the `<fDecl>` element, which is a natural bearer of the *targetDatcat* attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.

2.3.9. att.declarable

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

Module	tei
Members	bibl correspDesc listBibl listPerson listPlace sourceDesc textClass
Attributes	default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.truthValue

	Legal values are:	**true**	
			This element is selected if its parent is selected
		false	
			This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.		

2.3.10. att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
Module	tei
Members	body div facsimile floatingText graphic msDesc p ref term text
Attributes	decls (declarations) identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

2.3.11. att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
Module	tei
Members	date del ex gap mod space subst supplied unclear
Attributes	att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) unit names the unit used for the measurement **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Suggested values include:** **cm** (centimetres) **mm** (millimetres) **in** (inches) **line** lines of text **char** (characters) characters of text quantity specifies the length in the units specified **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words. **Status** Optional

		Datatype	teidata.text
			`<gap extent="5 words"/>`
			`<height extent="half the page"/>`
	precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.certainty
	scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include:	**all** measurement applies to all instances.
			most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
			range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

2.3.12. att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	tei
Members	div
Attributes	att.fragmentable (@part)
	org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are: **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
	uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]
	sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are: **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.
	medial division lacks material at start and end.
	final division lacks material at start.
	unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.

		com- **plete** division is not a sample.[Default]

2.3.13. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>bibl</u> <u>msDesc</u>
Attributes	status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
	Sample val- ues include:	**ap- proved** **can- di- date** **cleared** **dep- re- cat- ed** **draft** [Default] **em- bar- goed** **ex- pired** **frozen** **gal- ley** **pro- posed** **pub- lished** **rec- om- men- da- tion** **sub- mit- ted** **un- fin- ished** **with- drawn**

Example	`<revisionDesc status="published">`
	`  <change when="2010-10-21"`
	`   status="published"/>`
	`  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>`

```
        <change when="2010-08-02"
         status="embargoed"/>
        <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"
         who="#MSM"/>
        <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"
         who="#LB"/>
      </revisionDesc>
```

2.3.14. att.editLike

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]			
Module	tei		
Members	att.transcriptional[mod subst] corr date ex expan gap orgName place supplied unclear		
Attributes	evidence	indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
		Suggested values include:	**internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.
			external there is external evidence to support the intervention.
			conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.
	instant	indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.xTruthValue
		Default	false
Note	The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc. Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.		

2.3.15. att.edition

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.			
Module	tei		
Members	cb lb milestone pb		
Attributes	ed	(edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
	edRef	(edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.	
		Status	Optional

	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space

Example	`<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>`
	`<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>`
	`<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>`

Example	`<listBibl>`
	`  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">`
	`   <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>`,
	`  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>`
	`  </bibl>`
	`  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">`
	`   <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>`,
	`  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>`
	`  </bibl>`
	`</listBibl>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of`
	`the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their`
	`strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,`
	`still living their personal lives in zest and endless`
	`novelty of action, … I saw myself still`
	`preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid`
	`con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>`

2.3.16. att.fragmentable

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>att.divLike</u>[div] <u>att.segLike</u>[seg] <u>l</u> <u>p</u>
Attributes	part	specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Legal values are:	**Y**
			(yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect
			N
			(no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]
			I
			(initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element
			M
			(medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
			F
			(final) this is the final part of a fragmented element
		Note	The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

2.3.17. att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>TEI</u> <u>abbr</u> <u>accMat</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>address</u> <u>anchor</u> <u>author</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>body</u> <u>byline</u> <u>cb</u> <u>cell</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>closer</u> <u>collection</u> <u>corr</u> <u>correspContext</u> <u>correspDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>div</u> <u>edition</u> edi-

	tionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename for-mula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPer-son listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness
Attributes	att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.glob-al.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status	Optional
Datatype	ID
Note	The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.text
Note	The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.language

```
<p> … The consequences of
this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

Note	The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHead-er> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages. Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*. The authoritative list of registered language sub-tags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see https://www.w3.org/International/articles/lan-guage-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choos-ing-language-tags.en.php. The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though

		these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.
xml:base		provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Selections from <title level="m">The Collected Letters of Robert Southey. Part 1: 17
 </head>
 <listBibl xml:base="https://romantic-circles.org/sites/default/files/imported/editions/sou
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.3.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Grosvenor Charles Bedford</title>, <date when="1792-04-03">3 A
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.57.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Anna Seward</title>, <date when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>, <date from="1794-04-05"
     to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>.
   </ref>
  </bibl>
 </listBibl>
</div>
```

		signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.
xml:space		
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are:	**default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable
		preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space
	Note	The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

2.3.18. att.global.change

att.global.change provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.	
Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat add addrLine address anchor author biblScope body byline cb cell choice cit closer collection corr correspContext correspDesc country date dateline div edition editionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename formula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness]
Attributes	change — points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.
	Status — Optional
	Datatype — 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

2.3.19. att.global.facs

att.global.facs provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat add addrLine address anchor author biblScope body byline cb cell choice cit closer collection corr correspContext correspDesc country date dateline div edition editionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename formula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness]
Attributes	facs (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

2.3.20. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]	
Module	linking
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat add addrLine address anchor author biblScope body byline cb cell choice cit closer collection corr correspContext correspDesc country date dateline div edition editionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename formula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness] bibl placeName
Attributes	corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>
```

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value

is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">Londo
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
     allegorical character in mayoral shows.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>
```

In this example, a <u><place></u> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <u><person></u> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

synch	(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

sameAs	points to an element that is the same as the current element.
	Status Optional
	Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>

copyOf	points to an element of which the current element is a copy.
	Status Optional
	Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
	Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

next	points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
	Status Optional
	Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
	Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

prev	(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
	Status Optional
	Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
	Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

exclude	points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
	Status Optional

		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	select	selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
		Note	This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

2.3.21. att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]			
Module	tei		
Members	<u>att.global</u>[<u>TEI</u> <u>abbr</u> <u>accMat</u> <u>add</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>address</u> <u>anchor</u> <u>author</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>body</u> <u>byline</u> <u>cb</u> <u>cell</u> <u>choice</u> <u>cit</u> <u>closer</u> <u>collection</u> <u>corr</u> <u>correspContext</u> <u>correspDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>div</u> <u>edition</u> <u>editionStmt</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>ex</u> <u>expan</u> <u>facsimile</u> <u>figure</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>floatingText</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>forename</u> <u>formula</u> <u>fw</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>handDesc</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>idno</u> <u>institution</u> <u>item</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>licence</u> <u>list</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>metamark</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>mod</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>msIdentifier</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>notesStmt</u> <u>num</u> <u>opener</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>persName</u> <u>person</u> <u>physDesc</u> <u>place</u> <u>postscript</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>row</u> <u>salute</u> <u>seg</u> <u>sic</u> <u>signed</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surname</u> <u>table</u> <u>teiCorpus</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u> <u>textClass</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>trailer</u> <u>unclear</u> <u>witness</u>] <u>bibl</u> <u>del</u>		
Attributes	rend	(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
		``` <head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head> ```	
		Note	These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.
	style	contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.text</u>
		``` <head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head> ```	
		Note	Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4">

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If *style* and *rendition* are both present on an element, then *style* overrides or complements *rendition*. *style* should not be used in conjunction with *rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

</td></tr>
</table>

	rendition		points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

		Note	The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

2.3.22. att.global.responsibility

colspan	**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]
Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat add addrLine address anchor author biblScope body byline cb cell choice cit closer collection corr correspContext correspDesc country date dateline div edition editionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename formula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness] placeName

Attributes	cert		(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.probCert</u>
	resp		(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
		Status	Optional

	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	Note	To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<u><person></u> or <org>) but to a <u><respStmt></u>, <u><author></u>, <u><editor></u> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <u><respStmt></u>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example	Blessed are the <choice> <sic>cheesemakers</sic> <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr> </choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
Example	<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg> <!-- ... --> <l>Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing sla<choice> <sic>n</sic> <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr> </choice>es,</l> <!-- ... --> </lg> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"> <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp> <name>Janelle Jenstad</name> </respStmt>

2.3.23. att.global.source

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI <u>abbr accMat add addrLine address anchor author biblScope body byline cb cell choice cit closer collection corr correspContext correspDesc country date dateline div edition editionStmt editor email ex expan facsimile figure fileDesc floatingText foreign forename formula fw gap graphic handDesc head hi idno institution item l lb licence list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit metamark milestone mod msDesc msIdentifier name note notesStmt num opener orgName orig p pb persName person physDesc place postscript profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref resp row salute seg sic signed sourceDesc space subst supplied surname table teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt trailer unclear witness</u>]

Attributes	source	specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')"/> <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef | self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec) and $srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule>
	Note	The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

	On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn. In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:4.3.2` for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a `<prefixDef>`. When used on elements describing schema components, *source* should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.
Example	``` <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012"> term.</quote> <!-- ... --> ```

Example	```
	<!-- ... -->
	 <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the
	   less we seem to know.</quote>
	<!-- ... -->
	
	<!-- ... -->
	<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
	 <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
	<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of
	   Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.
	
	</bibl>```

Example	```<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>``` Include in the schema an element named <u><p></u> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.
Example	```<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </schemaSpec>``` Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

2.3.24. att.internetMedia

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
Module	tei
Members	att.media[graphic]
Attributes	mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
Example	In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8. ```<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>```
Note	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

2.3.25. att.media

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.	
Module	tei
Members	graphic

Attributes	att.internetMedia (@mimeType)		
	width	Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.outputMeasurement
	height	Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.outputMeasurement
	scale	Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric

2.3.26. att.milestoneUnit

att.milestoneUnit provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module	core
Members	milestone

Attributes	unit	provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.	
		Status	Required
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb> element).
			column column breaks.
			line line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).
			book any units termed book, liber, etc.
			poem individual poems in a collection.
			canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.
			speaker changes of speaker or narrator.
			stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.
			act acts within a play.
			scene scenes within a play or act.
			section sections of any kind.
			absent passages not present in the reference edition.
			unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone n="23"
 ed="La"
 unit="Dreissiger"/>
 ... <milestone n="24"
 ed="AV"
 unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note		If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.
		In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).
		The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

2.3.27. att.msExcerpt

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

Module	msdescription	
Members	quote	
Attributes	defective	indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.xTruthValue
Note	In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.	

2.3.28. att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]

Module	tei	
Members	att.personal[forename orgName surname] author collection country editor institution pubPlace	
Attributes	att.canonical (@key, @ref)	
	role	may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
	nymRef	(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	Note	The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication

	is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

2.3.29. att.notated

att.notated provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.	
Module	tei
Members	formula quote seg
Attributes	notation names the notation used for the content of the element.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated

2.3.30. att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	tei
Members	forename orgName surname
Attributes	att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
	full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are: **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]
	abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.
	init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.
	sort (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.count

2.3.31. att.placement

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
Module	tei
Members	figure fw head metamark trailer
Attributes	place specifies where this item is placed.
	Status Recommended
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
	Suggested values include: **top** at the top of the page
	bottom at the foot of the page

		mar-gin	in the margin (left, right, or both)
		op-po-site	on the opposite, i.e. facing, page
		over-leaf	on the other side of the leaf
		above	above the line
		right	to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure
		be-low	below the line
		left	to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure
		end	at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.
		in-line	within the body of the text.
		in-space	in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
 foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

2.3.32. att.pointing

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei
Members	licence ref term
Attributes	targetLang	specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.language
		Schematron	<sch:rule context-t="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

		Note	The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.
	target		specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace
		Note	One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.
	evaluate		(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer. **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer. **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.
		Note	If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

2.3.33. att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.			
Module	tei		
Members	<u>att.dimensions</u>[<u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>ex</u> <u>gap</u> <u>mod</u> <u>space</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>unclear</u>] <u>num</u>		
Attributes	atLeast		gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	atMost		gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	min		where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric

	max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.numeric
	confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.probability
| **Example** | | ```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible"
  extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/>
</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
``` |
| **Example** | | ```
Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern
Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided <measure atLeast="120000000" unit="USD"
commodity="currency">more than
$120m</measure> in aid to Ukrainians.
``` |

2.3.34. att.resourced

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.	
Module	tei
Members	graphic
Attributes	url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.
	Status Required
	Datatype teidata.pointer

2.3.35. att.segLike

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	tei
Members	seg
Attributes	att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat, @targetDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)
	function (function) characterizes the function of the segment.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a `<cl>`, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a `<phr>`, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

2.3.36. att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]	
Module	tei
Members	item list listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit msDesc place term witness
Attributes	sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.word	

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah
ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
<term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first
cousin.
```

	Note	The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent
		Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

2.3.37. att.spanning

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module	tei		
Members	cb lb metamark milestone mod pb		
Attributes	spanTo	indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
		Schematron	The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]"]>The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Note	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.		

2.3.38. att.tableDecoration

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics, and Notated Music]

Module	figures		
Members	cell row		
Attributes	role	(role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Suggested values include:	**label** labelling or descriptive information only.

		da-	
		ta	data values.[Default]
	Note		When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <u><row></u> element.
rows		(rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.	
	Status		Optional
	Datatype		<u>teidata.count</u>
	Default		1
	Note		A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.
cols		(columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.	
	Status		Optional
	Datatype		<u>teidata.count</u>
	Default		1
	Note		A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

2.3.39. att.timed

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

Module	tei		
Members	<u>gap</u>		
Attributes	start		indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.
	Status		Optional
	Datatype		<u>teidata.pointer</u>
	Note		If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.
	end		indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.
	Status		Optional
	Datatype		<u>teidata.pointer</u>
	Note		If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

2.3.40. att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module	tei		
Members	<u>mod</u> <u>subst</u>		
Attributes	att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.written</u> (@hand)		
	status		indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
	Sample values include:	**duplicate**	all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.
		duplicate-partial	part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original
		excessStart	Some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
		excessEnd	the text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
		shortStart	some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
		shortEnd	some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
		partial	some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
		unremarkable	the deletion is not faulty.[Default]
	Note	Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.	
		Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.	
cause	documents the presumed cause for the intervention.		
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
seq	(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.		
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.count	

2.3.41. att.typed

att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2.

Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

Module	tei
Members	TEI abbr accMat anchor bibl cb cit collection corr correspAction correspDesc country date desc div figure floatingText forename fw graphic head idno institution lb list listBibl listPerson listPlace milestone mod msDesc name note num orgName pb place placeName ptr quote ref seg surname table teiCorpus term text title trailer

Attributes	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
 <head>Night in Tarras</head>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
</div>
```

		Note	The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.
	subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Note	The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>		
Note	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .		

2.3.42. att.written

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module	tei
Members	att.transcriptional[mod subst] closer div figure fw head hi opener p postscript salute seg signed text trailer

Attributes	hand	points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.pointer

2.4. Macros

2.4.1. macro.limitedContent

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>desc</u>
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_macro.limitedContent = (text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.inter)* ```

2.4.2. macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>add</u> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>hi</u> <u>mod</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>salute</u> <u>seg</u> <u>sic</u> <u>signed</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>title</u> <u>unclear</u>
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.paraPart"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_macro.paraContent = (text | tei_model.paraPart)* ```

2.4.3. macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>abbr</u> <u>addrLine</u> <u>author</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>country</u> <u>edition</u> <u>editor</u> <u>email</u> <u>expan</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>forename</u> <u>fw</u> <u>name</u> <u>num</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>surname</u> <u>term</u>
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.attributable"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Declaration	```
	tei_macro.phraseSeq =
	   (
	      text
	    | tei_model.gLike
	    | tei_model.attributable
	    | tei_model.phrase
	    | tei_model.global
	    )*
	``

2.4.4. macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	collection institution resp
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.global)* ```

2.4.5. macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	accMat cell item licence metamark note quote
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Declaration	```
	tei_macro.specialPara =
	   (
	      text
	    | tei_model.gLike
	    | tei_model.phrase
	    | tei_model.inter
	    | tei_model.divPart
	    | tei_model.global
	   )*
	``

2.4.6. macro.xtext

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	ex
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_macro.xtext = (text | tei_model.gLike)* ```

2.5. Datatypes

2.5.1. teidata.certainty

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	``` <content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content> ```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.certainty = "high"	"medium"	"low"	"unknown"```
Note	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

2.5.2. teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • handDesc/@hands • table/@rows • table/@cols
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> ```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger```
Note	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

2.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> ```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }```
Example	```<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>```
Example	```<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>```
Example	```<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>```
Example	```<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>```
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may

	have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

2.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> ```
Declaration	`tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`
Example	`<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>`
Example	`<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>`
Example	`<date dur="P7D">a week</date>`
Example	`<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

2.5.5. teidata.enumerated

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
Module	tei

Used by	teidata.gender teidata.sexElement:
	
	  • TEI/@type
	  • abbr/@type
	  • availability/@status
	  • bibl/@type
	  • bibl/@subtype
	  • biblScope/@unit
	  • correspAction/@type
	  • date/@type
	  • desc/@type
	  • fw/@type
	  • gap/@unit
	  • gap/@reason
	  • gap/@agent
	  • idno/@type
	  • institution/@type
	  • list/@type

- listBibl/@type
- listBibl/@subtype
- listPerson/@type
- listPlace/@type
- msDesc/@type
- name/@type
- note/@type
- num/@type
- person/@role
- person/@age
- ptr/@type
- ptr/@subtype
- ref/@type
- ref/@subtype
- space/@unit
- space/@dim
- title/@type
- title/@level
- unclear/@reason
- unclear/@agent

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | `tei_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word` |
| Note | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.
  Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element. |

2.5.6. teidata.gender

teidata.gender defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: - person/@gender
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | `tei_teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated` |
| Note | Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.
  Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. `<gen>`, *msd* as defined in att.linguistic, and 9.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms). |

2.5.7. teidata.language

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]	
Module	tei

Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <alternate> <dataRef name="language"/> <valList> <valItem ident=""/> </valList> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	`tei_teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`

Note	The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.
	
	  A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.
	
	language
	  The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.
	
	script
	  The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.
	
	region
	  Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.
	
	variant
	  An IANA-registered variation. These codes 'are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags'.
	
	extension
	  An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.
	
	private use
	  An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.
	
	  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.
	
	  Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header.
	
	  Examples include
	
	sn
	  Shona

zh-TW	
	Taiwanese
zh-Han-t-HK	Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong
en-SL	
	English as spoken in Sierra Leone
pl	
	Polish
es-MX	
	Spanish as spoken in Mexico
es-419	
	Spanish as spoken in Latin America
	The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

2.5.8. teidata.name

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content>```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.name = xsd:Name```
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

2.5.9. teidata.numeric

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • num/@value
Content model	```<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content>```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.numeric = xsd:double	token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" }	xsd:decimal```

Note	Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.
	    To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.
	    A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

2.5.10. teidata.outputMeasurement

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"/> </content>```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.outputMeasurement = token { pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)" }```
Example	```<figure> <head>The TEI Logo</head> <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc> <graphic height="600px" width="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/> </figure>```
Note	These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

2.5.11. teidata.pattern

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <dataRef name="token"/> </content>```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.pattern = token```
Note	A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel *matches* each of the three strings) Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

2.5.12. teidata.point

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/> </content>```
Declaration	```tei_teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }```

| Example | ```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
   <graphic url="handwriting.png"/>
  </zone>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
``` |
|---|---|
| Note | A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not. |

2.5.13. teidata.pointer

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>add</u>/@resp • <u>date</u>/@calendar • <u>del</u>/@rendition • <u>hi</u>/@rendition • <u>hi</u>/@hand • <u>keywords</u>/@scheme • <u>licence</u>/@target • <u>metamark</u>/@target • <u>space</u>/@resp
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | ```
tei_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }
``` |
| Note | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://-mr----nx.mirbg4--n###.########-#####.####/` is encoded as `http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/` |

2.5.14. teidata.probCert

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>date</u>/@cert • <u>hi</u>/@cert • <u>placeName</u>/@cert
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | ```
tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty
``` |

2.5.15. teidata.probability

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	```<content> <dataRef name="double"/> </content>```
Declaration	`tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double`
Note	Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

2.5.16. teidata.replacement

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <textNode/> </content>```
Declaration	`tei_teidata.replacement = text`

2.5.17. teidata.sex

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • person/@sex
Content model	```<content> <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/> </content>```
Declaration	`tei_teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated`
Note	Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

2.5.18. teidata.temporal.iso

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>```

| | ```
    </alternate>
  </content>
``` |
| **Declaration** | ```
tei_teidata.temporal.iso =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime
 | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }
``` |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.
    For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. |

2.5.19. teidata.temporal.w3c

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.
Module	tei
Used by	
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Declaration** | ```
tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime
``` |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

2.5.20. teidata.text

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • biblScope/@n • correspContext/@n • title/@n
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <dataRef name="string"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Declaration** | ```
tei_teidata.text = string
``` |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

2.5.21. teidata.truthValue

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean ```
Note	The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

2.5.22. teidata.version

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • TEI/@version • teiCorpus/@version
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } ```
Note	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

2.5.23. teidata.versionNumber

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" } ```

2.5.24. teidata.word

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.enumeratedElement: • hi/@rend • metamark/@function • msDesc/@rend

- person/@rend
- supplied/@reason

Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" } ```
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

2.5.25. teidata.xTruthValue

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <alternate> <dataRef name="boolean"/> <valList> <valItem ident="unknown"/> <valItem ident="inapplicable"/> </valList> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean	("unknown" | "inapplicable") ```
Note	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

2.5.26. teidata.xpath

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <textNode/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` tei_teidata.xpath = text ```
Note	Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.. When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.